# Chapter 3 Statistical Learning Alternatives to OLS

This chapter considers several alternatives to OLS for the multiple linear regression model. Large sample theory is give for p fixed, but the prediction intervals can have p > n.

# 3.1 The MLR Model

From Definition 1.34, the multiple linear regression (MLR) model is

$$Y_i = \beta_1 + x_{i,2}\beta_2 + \dots + x_{i,p}\beta_p + e_i = \boldsymbol{x}_i^T\boldsymbol{\beta} + e_i \tag{3.1}$$

for i = 1, ..., n. This model is also called the **full model**. Here n is the sample size and the random variable  $e_i$  is the *i*th error. Assume that the  $e_i$  are iid with expected value  $E(e_i) = 0$  and variance  $V(e_i) = \sigma^2$ . In matrix notation, these n equations become  $\mathbf{Y} = \mathbf{X}\boldsymbol{\beta} + \mathbf{e}$  where  $\mathbf{Y}$  is an  $n \times 1$  vector of dependent variables,  $\mathbf{X}$  is an  $n \times p$  matrix of predictors,  $\boldsymbol{\beta}$  is a  $p \times 1$  vector of unknown coefficients, and  $\mathbf{e}$  is an  $n \times 1$  vector of unknown errors. In this chapter, we will often use the MLR model

$$Y_i = \alpha + x_{i,1}\beta_1 + \dots + x_{i,p}\beta_p + e_i = \alpha + \boldsymbol{x}_i^T\boldsymbol{\beta} + e_i$$
(3.2)

for i = 1, ..., n. For this model, we may use  $\boldsymbol{\phi} = (\alpha, \boldsymbol{\beta}^T)^T$  with  $\boldsymbol{Y} = \boldsymbol{X}\boldsymbol{\phi} + \boldsymbol{e}$ .

Ordinary least squares (OLS) large sample theory will be useful for this chapter. Also see Theorem 2.11. Let  $\mathbf{X} = (\mathbf{1} \ \mathbf{X}_1)$ . For model (3.1), the *i*th row of  $\mathbf{X}$  is  $(1, x_{i,2}, \dots, x_{i,p})$  while for model (3.2), the *i*th row of  $\mathbf{X}$  is  $(1, x_{i,1}, \dots, x_{i,p})$ , and  $\mathbf{Y} = \alpha \mathbf{1} + \mathbf{X}_1 \boldsymbol{\beta} + \mathbf{e} = \mathbf{X} \boldsymbol{\phi} + \mathbf{e}$ .

**Definition 3.1.** Using the above notation for model (3.2), let  $\boldsymbol{x}_i^T = (x_{i1}, ..., x_{ip})$ , let  $\alpha$  be the intercept, and let the slopes vector  $\boldsymbol{\beta} = (\beta_1, ..., \beta_p)^T$ . Let the population covariance matrices

#### **3 Statistical Learning Alternatives to OLS**

$$\operatorname{Cov}(\boldsymbol{x}) = E[(\boldsymbol{x} - E(\boldsymbol{x}))(\boldsymbol{x} - E(\boldsymbol{x}))^T] = \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}}, \text{ and}$$
$$\operatorname{Cov}(\boldsymbol{x}, Y) = E[(\boldsymbol{x} - E(\boldsymbol{x}))(Y - E(Y))] = \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}Y}.$$

If the cases  $(\boldsymbol{x}_i, Y_i)$  are iid from some population where  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}Y}$  exists and  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}}$  is nonsingular, then the population coefficients from an OLS regression of Y on  $\boldsymbol{x}$  (even if a linear model does not hold) are

$$\alpha = \alpha_{OLS} = E(Y) - \boldsymbol{\beta}^T E(\boldsymbol{x}) \text{ and } \boldsymbol{\beta} = \boldsymbol{\beta}_{OLS} = \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}}^{-1} \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}Y}.$$

**Definition 3.2.** Let the sample covariance matrices be

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}} = \frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{i=1}^{n} (\boldsymbol{x}_i - \overline{\boldsymbol{x}}) (\boldsymbol{x}_i - \overline{\boldsymbol{x}})^T \text{ and } \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}Y} = \frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{i=1}^{n} (\boldsymbol{x}_i - \overline{\boldsymbol{x}}) (Y_i - \overline{Y}).$$

Let the method of moments estimators be  $\tilde{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} (\boldsymbol{x}_i - \overline{\boldsymbol{x}}) (\boldsymbol{x}_i - \overline{\boldsymbol{x}})^T$  and  $\tilde{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}Y} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} (\boldsymbol{x}_i - \overline{\boldsymbol{x}}) (Y_i - \overline{Y}) = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} \boldsymbol{x}_i Y_i - \overline{\boldsymbol{x}} \overline{Y}.$ 

The method of moment estimators are often called the maximum likelihood estimators, but are the MLE if the  $(Y_i, \boldsymbol{x}_i^T)^T$  are iid from a multivariate normal distribution, a very strong assumption. In Theorem 3.1, note that  $\boldsymbol{D} = \boldsymbol{X}_1^T \boldsymbol{X}_1 - n \overline{\boldsymbol{x}} \ \overline{\boldsymbol{x}}^T = (n-1) \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}}^{-1}$ .

Theorem 3.1: Seber and Lee (2003, p. 106). Let  $X = (1 \ X_1)$ . Then  $X^T Y = \begin{pmatrix} n \overline{Y} \\ X_1^T Y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} n \overline{Y} \\ \sum_{i=1}^n x_i Y_i \end{pmatrix}, \quad X^T X = \begin{pmatrix} n & n \overline{x}^T \\ n \overline{x} & X_1^T X_1 \end{pmatrix},$ and  $(X^T X)^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{n} + \overline{x}^T D^{-1} \overline{x} & -\overline{x}^T D^{-1} \\ -D^{-1} \overline{x} & D^{-1} \end{pmatrix}$ 

where the  $p \times p$  matrix  $\boldsymbol{D}^{-1} = [(n-1)\hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}}]^{-1} = \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}}^{-1}/(n-1).$ 

Under model (3.2),  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\phi}} = \hat{\boldsymbol{\phi}}_{OLS} = (\boldsymbol{X}^T \boldsymbol{X})^{-1} \boldsymbol{X}^T \boldsymbol{Y}.$ 

Theorem 3.2: Second way to compute  $\hat{\phi}$ : a) If  $\hat{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}}^{-1}$  exists, then  $\hat{\alpha} = \overline{Y} - \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}^T \overline{\boldsymbol{x}}$  and

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}} = rac{n}{n-1} \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}}^{-1} \tilde{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}Y} = \tilde{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}}^{-1} \tilde{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}Y} = \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}}^{-1} \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}Y}.$$

b) Suppose that  $(Y_i, \boldsymbol{x}_i^T)^T$  are iid random vectors such that  $\sigma_Y^2, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}}^{-1}$ , and  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}Y}$  exist. Then  $\hat{\alpha} \xrightarrow{P} \alpha$  and

### 3.1 The MLR Model

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}} \xrightarrow{P} \boldsymbol{\beta}$$
 as  $n \to \infty$ 

where  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are given by Definition 3.1.

**Proof.** Note that

$$oldsymbol{Y}^T oldsymbol{X}_1 = (Y_1 \cdots Y_n) egin{bmatrix} oldsymbol{x}_1^T \ dots \ oldsymbol{x}_n^T \end{bmatrix} = \sum_{i=1}^n Y_i oldsymbol{x}_i^T$$

and

$$oldsymbol{X}_1^Toldsymbol{Y} = [oldsymbol{x}_1\cdotsoldsymbol{x}_n] egin{bmatrix} Y_1 \ dots \ Y_n \end{bmatrix} = \sum_{i=1}^n oldsymbol{x}_i Y_i.$$

So

$$\begin{bmatrix} \hat{\alpha} \\ \hat{\beta} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{n} + \overline{x}^T D^{-1} \overline{x} & -\overline{x}^T D^{-1} \\ -D^{-1} \overline{x} & D^{-1} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{1}^T \\ \mathbf{X}_1^T \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{Y} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{n} + \overline{x}^T D^{-1} \overline{x} & -\overline{x}^T D^{-1} \\ -D^{-1} \overline{x} & D^{-1} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} n \overline{Y} \\ \mathbf{X}_1^T \mathbf{Y} \end{bmatrix}.$$

Thus  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}} = -n\boldsymbol{D}^{-1}\overline{\boldsymbol{x}}\ \overline{Y} + \boldsymbol{D}^{-1}\boldsymbol{X}_{1}^{T}\boldsymbol{Y} = \boldsymbol{D}^{-1}(\boldsymbol{X}_{1}^{T}\boldsymbol{Y} - n\overline{\boldsymbol{x}}\ \overline{Y}) =$ 

$$\boldsymbol{D}^{-1}\left[\sum_{i=1}^{n}\boldsymbol{u}_{i}Y_{i}-n\overline{\boldsymbol{x}}\ \overline{Y}\right]=\frac{\hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}}^{-1}}{n-1}n\hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}Y}=\frac{n}{n-1}\hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}}^{-1}\hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}Y}.$$
 Then

 $\hat{\alpha} = \overline{Y} + n\overline{x}^T D^{-1}\overline{x} \ \overline{Y} - \overline{x}^T D^{-1} X_1^T Y = \overline{Y} + [n\overline{Y}\overline{x}^T D^{-1} - Y^T X_1 D^{-1}]\overline{x}$  $= \overline{Y} - \hat{\beta}^T \overline{x}.$  The convergence in probability results hold since sample means and sample covariance matrices are consistent estimators of the population means and population covariance matrices.  $\Box$ 

It is important to note that the convergence in probability results are for iid  $(Y_i, \boldsymbol{x}_i^T)^T$  with second moments and nonsingular  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}}$ : a linear model  $\boldsymbol{Y} = \boldsymbol{X}\boldsymbol{\beta} + \boldsymbol{e}$  does not need to hold. When the linear model does hold, the second method for computing  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}$  is still valid even if  $\boldsymbol{X}$  is a constant matrix, and  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}} \xrightarrow{P} \boldsymbol{\beta}$  by Theorem 3.3 b). Note that for Theorem 3.3 b) with iid cases and  $\boldsymbol{\mu}_{\boldsymbol{x}} = E(\boldsymbol{x})$ ,

$$n(\boldsymbol{X}^T\boldsymbol{X})^{-1} \xrightarrow{P} \boldsymbol{V} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 + \boldsymbol{\mu}_{\boldsymbol{x}}^T\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}}^{-1}\boldsymbol{\mu}_{\boldsymbol{x}} & -\boldsymbol{\mu}_{\boldsymbol{x}}^T\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}}^{-1} \\ -\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}}^{-1}\boldsymbol{\mu}_{\boldsymbol{x}} & \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}}^{-1} \end{bmatrix}$$

There are many large sample theory results for ordinary least squares. The following theorem is important. See, for example, Sen and Singer (1993, p. 280).

#### **3 Statistical Learning Alternatives to OLS**

Theorem 3.3, OLS CLTs. Consider the MLR model and assume that the zero mean errors are iid with  $E(e_i) = 0$  and  $VAR(e_i) = \sigma^2$ . If the  $x_i$  are random vectors, assume that the cases  $(\boldsymbol{x}_i, Y_i)$  are independent, and that the  $e_i$  and  $x_i$  are independent. Also assume that  $\max_i(h_1, ..., h_n) \to 0$  and

$$\frac{\boldsymbol{X}^T\boldsymbol{X}}{n} \to \boldsymbol{V}^{-1}$$

as  $n \to \infty$  where the convergence is in probability if the  $x_i$  are random vectors (instead of nonstochastic constant vectors).

a) For equation (3.1), the OLS estimator  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}$  satisfies

$$\sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}} - \boldsymbol{\beta}) \xrightarrow{D} N_p(\boldsymbol{0}, \sigma^2 \boldsymbol{V}).$$
 (3.3)

b) For equation (3.2), the OLS estimator  $\hat{\phi}$  satisfies

$$\sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\phi}} - \boldsymbol{\phi}) \xrightarrow{D} N_{p+1}(\boldsymbol{0}, \sigma^2 \boldsymbol{V}).$$
 (3.4)

c) Suppose the cases  $(\boldsymbol{x}_i, Y_i)$  are iid from some population and the equation (3.2) MLR model  $Y_i = \alpha + \boldsymbol{x}_i^T \boldsymbol{\beta} + e_i$  holds. Assume that  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}}^{-1}$  and  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x},Y}$  exist. Then equation (3.4) holds and

$$\sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}} - \boldsymbol{\beta}) \xrightarrow{D} N_p(\boldsymbol{0}, \sigma^2 \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}}^{-1})$$
 (3.5)

where  $\boldsymbol{\beta} = \boldsymbol{\beta}_{OLS} = \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}}^{-1} \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x},Y}.$ 

**Remark 3.1.** Consider Theorem 3.3. For a) and b), the theory acts as if the  $x_i$  are constant even if the  $x_i$  are random vectors. The literature says the  $x_i$  can be constants, or condition on  $x_i$  if the  $x_i$  are random vectors. The main assumptions for a) and b) are that the errors are iid with second moments and the  $n(\mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X})^{-1}$  is well behaved. The strong assumptions for c) are much stronger than those for a) and b), but the assumption of iid cases is often reasonable if the cases come from some population.

**Remark 3.2.** Consider MLR model (3.2). Let  $w_i = A_n x_i$  for i = 1, ..., nwhere  $A_n$  is a full rank  $k \times p$  matrix with  $1 \le k \le p$ . a) Let  $\Sigma^*$  be  $\hat{\Sigma}$  or  $\tilde{\Sigma}$ . Then  $\Sigma^*_{\boldsymbol{w}} = A_n \Sigma^*_{\boldsymbol{x}} A_n^T$  and  $\Sigma^*_{\boldsymbol{w}Y} = A_n \Sigma^*_{\boldsymbol{x}Y}$ . b) If  $A_n$  is a constant matrix, then  $\Sigma_{\boldsymbol{w}} = A_n \Sigma_{\boldsymbol{x}} A_n^T$  and

$$\boldsymbol{\Sigma} \boldsymbol{w} \boldsymbol{Y} = \boldsymbol{A}_n \boldsymbol{\Sigma} \boldsymbol{x} \boldsymbol{Y}$$

c) Let  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}(\boldsymbol{u}, Y)$  and  $\boldsymbol{\beta}(\boldsymbol{u}, Y)$  be the estimator and parameter from the OLS regression of Y on u. The constant parameter vector should not depend on n. Suppose the cases are iid and A is a constant matrix that does not depend on *n*. By Theorem 3.2,  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}(\boldsymbol{w},Y) = \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{w}}^{-1} \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{w}Y} = [\boldsymbol{A}_n \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}} \boldsymbol{A}_n]^{-1} \boldsymbol{A}_n \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}Y} = [\boldsymbol{A}_n \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}} \boldsymbol{A}_n]^{-1} \boldsymbol{A}_n \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}Y} = [\boldsymbol{A}_n \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}} \boldsymbol{A}_n]^{-1} \boldsymbol{A}_n \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}} \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}(\boldsymbol{x},Y)$ . If  $\boldsymbol{A}_n \xrightarrow{P} \boldsymbol{A}$ ,  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}} \xrightarrow{P} \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}}$ , and  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}(\boldsymbol{x},Y) \xrightarrow{P} \boldsymbol{\lambda}_n$  $\boldsymbol{\beta}(\boldsymbol{x}, Y)$ , then  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}(\boldsymbol{w}, Y) \xrightarrow{P} \boldsymbol{\beta}(\boldsymbol{w}, Y) = [\boldsymbol{A}\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}}\boldsymbol{A}]^{-1}\boldsymbol{A}\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}}\boldsymbol{\beta}(\boldsymbol{x}, Y).$ 

#### 3.1 The MLR Model

A problem with OLS, is that V generally can't be estimated if p > n since typically  $(\mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X})^{-1}$  does not exist. If p > n, using  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\phi}} = (\mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X})^{-1} \mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{Y}$  is a poor estimator that interpolates the data, where  $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$  is a generalized inverse of  $\mathbf{A}$ . Often the software will not compute  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\phi}}$  if p > n.

There are many MLR methods, including OLS for the full model, forward selection with OLS, the marginal maximum likelihood estimator (MMLE), elastic net, principal components regression (PCR), partial least squares (PLS), lasso, lasso variable selection, and ridge regression (RR). For the last six methods, it is convenient to use centered or scaled data. Suppose U has observed values  $U_1, ..., U_n$ . For example, if  $U_i = Y_i$  then U corresponds to the response variable Y. The observed values of a random variable V are centered if their sample mean is 0. The centered values of U are  $V_i = U_i - \overline{U}$  for i = 1, ..., n. Let g be an integer near 0. If the sample variance of the  $U_i$  is

$$\hat{\sigma}_{g}^{2} = \frac{1}{n-g} \sum_{i=1}^{n} (U_{i} - \overline{U})^{2},$$

then the sample standard deviation of  $U_i$  is  $\hat{\sigma}_g$ . If the values of  $U_i$  are not all the same, then  $\hat{\sigma}_g > 0$ , and the standardized values of the  $U_i$  are

$$W_i = \frac{U_i - \overline{U}}{\hat{\sigma}_q}.$$

Typically g = 1 or g = 0 are used: g = 1 gives an unbiased estimator of  $\sigma^2$  while g = 0 gives the method of moments estimator. Note that the standardized values are centered,  $\overline{W} = 0$ , and the sample variance of the standardized values

$$\frac{1}{n-g}\sum_{i=1}^{n}W_{i}^{2} = 1.$$
(3.6)

**Remark 3.3.** Let  $Y = \alpha + \boldsymbol{x}^T \boldsymbol{\beta} + e$ . Let  $\boldsymbol{w}_i^T = (w_{i,1}, ..., w_{i,p})$  be the standardized vector of nontrivial predictors for the *i*th case. Since the standardized predictors are also centered,  $\overline{\boldsymbol{w}} = \boldsymbol{0}$ . Let the  $n \times p$  matrix of standardized nontrivial predictors  $\boldsymbol{W}_g = (W_{ij})$  when the predictors are standardized using  $\hat{\sigma}_g$ . Then the *i*th row of  $\boldsymbol{W}_g$  is  $\boldsymbol{w}_i^T$ . Thus,  $\sum_{i=1}^n W_{ij} = 0$  and  $\sum_{i=1}^n W_{ij}^2 = n-g$  for j = 1, ..., p. Hence

$$W_{ij} = \frac{x_{i,j} - \overline{x}_j}{\hat{\sigma}_j}$$
 where  $\hat{\sigma}_j^2 = \frac{1}{n-g} \sum_{i=1}^n (x_{i,j} - \overline{x}_j)^2$ 

is  $\hat{\sigma}_g$  for the *j*th variable  $x_j$ . Then the sample covariance matrix of the  $w_i$  is the sample correlation matrix of the  $x_i$ :

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\rho}}_{\boldsymbol{x}} = \boldsymbol{R}_{\boldsymbol{x}} = (r_{ij}) = \frac{\boldsymbol{W}_g^T \boldsymbol{W}_g}{n-g}$$

where  $r_{ij}$  is the sample correlation of  $x_i$  and  $x_j$ . Thus the sample correlation matrix  $\mathbf{R}_{\mathbf{x}}$  does not depend on g. Let  $\mathbf{Z} = \mathbf{Y} - \overline{\mathbf{Y}}$  where  $\overline{\mathbf{Y}} = \overline{\mathbf{Y}}\mathbf{1}$ . Since the R software tends to use g = 0, let  $\mathbf{W} = \mathbf{W}_0$ . Note that  $n \times p$  matrix  $\mathbf{W}$  does not include a vector  $\mathbf{1}$  of ones. Then regression through the origin is used for the model

$$\boldsymbol{Z} = \boldsymbol{W}\boldsymbol{\eta} + \boldsymbol{\epsilon} \tag{3.7}$$

where  $\mathbf{Z} = (Z_1, ..., Z_n)^T$  and  $\boldsymbol{\eta} = (\eta_1, ..., \eta_p)^T$ . The vector of fitted values  $\hat{\mathbf{Y}} = \overline{\mathbf{Y}} + \hat{\mathbf{Z}}$ .

**Remark 3.4.** i) Interest is in model (3.2): estimate  $\hat{Y}_f$  and  $\hat{\beta}$ . For many regression estimators, a method is needed so that everyone who uses the same units of measurements for the predictors and Y gets the same  $(\hat{Y}, \hat{\beta})$ . Equation (3.7) is a commonly used method for achieving this goal. Suppose g = 0. The method of moments estimator of the variance  $\sigma_w^2$  is

$$\hat{\sigma}_{g=0}^2 = S_M^2 = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n (w_i - \overline{w})^2.$$

When data  $x_i$  are standardized to have  $\overline{w} = 0$  and  $S_M^2 = 1$ , the standardized data  $w_i$  has no units. ii) Hence the estimators  $\hat{Z}$  and  $\hat{\eta}$  do not depend on the units of measurement of the  $x_i$  if standardized data and Equation (3.7) are used. Linear combinations of the  $w_i$  are linear combinations of the  $x_i$ . Thus the estimators  $\hat{Y}$  and  $\hat{\beta}$  are obtained using  $\hat{Z}$ ,  $\hat{\eta}$ , and  $\overline{Y}$ . The linear transformation to obtain  $(\hat{Y}, \hat{\beta})$  from  $(\hat{Z}, \hat{\eta})$  is unique for a given set of units of measurements for the  $x_i$  and Y. Hence everyone using the same units of measurements gets the same  $(\hat{Y}, \hat{\beta})$ . iii) Also, since  $\overline{W}_j = 0$  and  $S_{M,j}^2 = 1$ , the standardized predictor variables have similar spread, and the magnitude of  $\hat{\eta}_i$  is a measure of the importance of the predictor variable  $W_j$  for predicting Y.

**Remark 3.5.** Let  $\hat{\sigma}_j$  be the sample standard deviation of variable  $x_j$  (often with g = 0) for j = 1, ..., p. Let  $\hat{Y}_i = \hat{\alpha} + x_{i,1}\hat{\beta}_1 + \cdots + x_{i,p}\hat{\beta}_p = \hat{\alpha} + \boldsymbol{x}_i^T\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}$ . If standardized nontrivial predictors are used, then

$$\hat{Y}_{i} = \hat{\gamma} + w_{i,1}\hat{\eta}_{1} + \dots + w_{i,p}\hat{\eta}_{p} = \hat{\gamma} + \frac{x_{i,1} - \overline{x}_{1}}{\hat{\sigma}_{1}}\hat{\eta}_{1} + \dots + \frac{x_{i,p} - \overline{x}_{p}}{\hat{\sigma}_{p}}\hat{\eta}_{p}$$
$$= \hat{\gamma} + \boldsymbol{w}_{i}^{T}\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}} = \hat{\gamma} + \hat{Z}_{i} \qquad (3.8)$$

where

$$\hat{\eta}_j \approx \hat{\sigma}_j \hat{\beta}_j \tag{3.9}$$

for j = 1, ..., p with equality for OLS. (See Remark 3.6.) Often  $\hat{\gamma} = \overline{Y}$  so that  $\hat{Y}_i = \overline{Y}$  if  $x_{i,j} = \overline{x}_j$  for j = 1, ..., p. Then  $\hat{Y} = \overline{Y} + \hat{Z}$  where  $\overline{Y} = \overline{Y}\mathbf{1}$ . Note that

3.1 The MLR Model

$$\hat{\gamma} \approx \hat{\alpha} + \frac{\overline{x}_1}{\hat{\sigma}_1}\hat{\eta}_1 + \dots + \frac{\overline{x}_p}{\hat{\sigma}_p}\hat{\eta}_p$$

**Notation.** The symbol  $A \equiv B = f(c)$  means that A and B are equivalent and equal, and that f(c) is the formula used to compute A and B.

Most regression methods attempt to find an estimate  $\hat{\beta}$  of  $\beta$  which minimizes some criterion function Q(b) of the residuals. As in Definition 1.38, given an estimate **b** of  $\beta$ , the corresponding vector of *fitted values* is  $\hat{Y} \equiv \hat{Y}(b) = Xb$ , and the vector of *residuals* is  $\mathbf{r} \equiv \mathbf{r}(b) = \mathbf{Y} - \hat{\mathbf{Y}}(b)$ . See Definition 1.39 for the OLS model for  $\mathbf{Y} = \mathbf{X}\beta + \mathbf{e}$ . The following model is useful for the centered response and standardized nontrivial predictors, or if  $\mathbf{Z} = \mathbf{Y}, \mathbf{W} = \mathbf{X}_I$ , and  $\boldsymbol{\eta} = \beta_I$  corresponds to a submodel *I*.

**Definition 3.3.** Consider model (3.1)  $Y = \boldsymbol{x}^T \boldsymbol{\beta} + e$ . If  $\boldsymbol{Z} = \boldsymbol{W} \boldsymbol{\eta} + \boldsymbol{\epsilon}$ , where the  $n \times q$  matrix  $\boldsymbol{W}$  has full rank q = p - 1, then the *OLS estimator* 

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_{OLS} = (\boldsymbol{W}^T \boldsymbol{W})^{-1} \boldsymbol{W}^T \boldsymbol{Z}$$

minimizes the OLS criterion  $Q_{OLS}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \boldsymbol{r}(\boldsymbol{\eta})^T \boldsymbol{r}(\boldsymbol{\eta})$  over all vectors  $\boldsymbol{\eta} \in \mathbb{R}^{p-1}$ . The vector of *predicted* or *fitted values*  $\hat{\boldsymbol{Z}}_{OLS} = \boldsymbol{W}\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_{OLS} = \boldsymbol{H}\boldsymbol{Z}$  where  $\boldsymbol{H} = \boldsymbol{W}(\boldsymbol{W}^T\boldsymbol{W})^{-1}\boldsymbol{W}^T$ . The vector of residuals  $\boldsymbol{r} = \boldsymbol{r}(\boldsymbol{Z}, \boldsymbol{W}) = \boldsymbol{Z} - \hat{\boldsymbol{Z}} = (\boldsymbol{I} - \boldsymbol{H})\boldsymbol{Z}$ .

For model (3.1)  $Y = \mathbf{x}^T \boldsymbol{\beta} + e$ , let  $\mathbf{x} = (1 \ \mathbf{u})^T$ , and let  $\mathbf{Z} = \mathbf{W} \boldsymbol{\eta} + \boldsymbol{\epsilon}$ . Assume that the sample correlation matrix

$$\boldsymbol{R}_{\boldsymbol{u}} = \frac{\boldsymbol{W}^T \boldsymbol{W}}{n} \xrightarrow{P} \boldsymbol{V}^{-1}.$$
(3.10)

Note that  $V^{-1} = \rho_u$ , the population correlation matrix of the nontrivial predictors  $u_i$ , if the  $u_i$  are a random sample from a population. Let  $H = W(W^T W)^{-1} W^T = (h_{ij})$ , and assume that  $\max_{i=1,...,n} h_{ii} \xrightarrow{P} 0$  as  $n \to \infty$ . The following remark examines whether the OLS estimator satisfies

$$\boldsymbol{u}_n = \sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_{OLS} - \boldsymbol{\eta}) \xrightarrow{D} N_{p-1}(\boldsymbol{0}, \sigma^2 \boldsymbol{V}).$$
(3.11)

**Remark 3.6.** a) First consider centered data  $Y_i - \overline{Y} = \beta_1^* + (x_{i,2} - \overline{x}_2)\beta_2 + \cdots + (x_{i,p} - \overline{x}_p)\beta_p + e_i$  or  $Z_i = \beta_1^* + w_{i,2}\beta_2 + \cdots + w_{i,p}\beta_p + e_i$ . Do the OLS regression. Since the sample means of the centered response and centered predictors are  $0, \ \hat{\beta}_1^* = 0$ . In terms of the original predictors,  $\hat{Y}_i = \tilde{\beta}_1 + x_{i,2}\tilde{\beta}_2 + \cdots + x_{i,p}\tilde{\beta}_p$  where  $\tilde{\beta}_1 = \overline{Y} - \tilde{\beta}_2\overline{x}_2 - \cdots - \tilde{\beta}_p\overline{x}_p$ . Then  $\tilde{\beta} = \hat{\beta}$  since OLS estimators minimize the sum of squared residuals (if  $\tilde{\beta} \neq \hat{\beta}$ , then one of the estimators has a smaller sum of squared residuals, contradicting the fact that both estimators are OLS estimators). Hence centering the response and predictors gives an equivalent method for computing  $\beta$ , and the large sample theory for the equivalent estimators is unchanged.

b) Next consider scaling the predictors. If  $\mathbf{Y} = \mathbf{X}\boldsymbol{\beta}(\mathbf{X},\mathbf{Y}) + \mathbf{e}$ , the model with scaled predictors is  $\mathbf{Y} = \mathbf{W}\boldsymbol{\beta}(\mathbf{W},\mathbf{Y}) + \boldsymbol{\epsilon}$  where  $\boldsymbol{\beta}(\mathbf{X},\mathbf{Y})$  denotes the population coefficients from the OLS regression of  $\mathbf{Y}$  on  $\mathbf{X}$ . Here  $\mathbf{W} = \mathbf{X}\hat{\mathbf{A}}_n$ where the  $p \times p$  matrix  $\hat{\mathbf{A}}_n = diag(1, 1/s_2, ..., 1/s_p)$  where  $s_j = \hat{\sigma}_j$ . Since OLS is affine equivariant and  $\hat{\mathbf{A}}_n$  is nonsingular,  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}(\mathbf{W},\mathbf{Y}) = \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}(\mathbf{X}\hat{\mathbf{A}}_n,\mathbf{Y}) =$  $\hat{\mathbf{A}}_n^{-1}\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}(\mathbf{X},\mathbf{Y})$ . Then  $\mathbf{H}_{\mathbf{W}} = \mathbf{W}(\mathbf{W}^T\mathbf{W})^{-1}\mathbf{W}^T = \mathbf{X}(\mathbf{X}^T\mathbf{X})^{-1}\mathbf{X}^T = \mathbf{H}_{\mathbf{X}}$ , and the residuals and fitted values are the same for both models. If  $\mathbf{X}$  is a constant matrix, then  $\mathbf{W}$  is a constant matrix, but we will show that (3.11) often does not hold.

Assume  $\hat{A}_n \xrightarrow{P} A = diag(1, 1/\sigma_2, ..., 1/\sigma_p)$  where each  $\sigma_i > 0$ . Let  $\beta = \beta(\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{Y})$ . Then

$$\begin{split} \sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}(\boldsymbol{W},\boldsymbol{Y})-\boldsymbol{A}^{-1}\boldsymbol{\beta}) &= \sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{n}^{-1}\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}-\hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{n}^{-1}\boldsymbol{\beta}+\hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{n}^{-1}\boldsymbol{\beta}-\boldsymbol{A}^{-1}\boldsymbol{\beta}) \\ &= \sqrt{n}\hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{n}^{-1}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}-\boldsymbol{\beta}) + \sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{n}^{-1}-\boldsymbol{A}^{-1})\boldsymbol{\beta} = \boldsymbol{z}_{n}+\boldsymbol{b}_{n} \end{split}$$

where  $\boldsymbol{z}_n = \sqrt{n}\hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_n^{-1}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}} - \boldsymbol{\beta}) \xrightarrow{D} N_p(\boldsymbol{0}, \sigma^2 \boldsymbol{A}^{-1} \boldsymbol{V}_{\boldsymbol{x}} \boldsymbol{A}^{-1})$  if  $\sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}} - \boldsymbol{\beta}) \xrightarrow{D} N_p(\boldsymbol{0}, \sigma^2 \boldsymbol{V}_{\boldsymbol{x}})$ . Note that  $\hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_n^{-1}\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}} \xrightarrow{P} \boldsymbol{A}^{-1}\boldsymbol{\beta} = \boldsymbol{\beta}(\boldsymbol{W}, \boldsymbol{Y})$ . Now

$$\boldsymbol{b}_{n} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \sqrt{n}(\hat{\sigma}_{2} - \sigma_{2})\beta_{2} \\ \vdots \\ \sqrt{n}(\hat{\sigma}_{p} - \sigma_{p})\beta_{p} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ b_{2,n} \\ \vdots \\ b_{p,n} \end{pmatrix} = O_{p}(1)$$

if  $\sqrt{n}(\hat{\sigma}_i - \sigma_i) \xrightarrow{D} N(0, \tau_i^2)$ . Then  $b_{i,n} \xrightarrow{D} N(0, \beta_i^2 \tau_i^2)$  for i = 2, ..., p. Thus  $\sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}(\boldsymbol{W}, \boldsymbol{Y}) - \boldsymbol{A}^{-1}\boldsymbol{\beta})$  does not converge in distribution to  $\boldsymbol{z} \sim N_p(\boldsymbol{0}, \sigma^2 \boldsymbol{A}^{-1} \boldsymbol{V}_{\boldsymbol{x}} \boldsymbol{A}^{-1})$  unless  $\boldsymbol{b}_n \xrightarrow{P} \boldsymbol{0}$ . Note that tests of the form  $H_0: \boldsymbol{\beta}_I = \boldsymbol{0}$  can still be performed, but confidence intervals for  $\eta_i \neq 0$  will not have the desired coverage if  $\boldsymbol{z}$  is used as the asymptotic distribution. The convergence fails since  $\boldsymbol{Y} = \boldsymbol{X} \boldsymbol{A} \boldsymbol{A}^{-1} \boldsymbol{\beta} + \boldsymbol{e} = \boldsymbol{X} \hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_n \boldsymbol{A}^{-1} \boldsymbol{\beta} + \boldsymbol{\epsilon}$  which means

$$oldsymbol{\epsilon} = oldsymbol{X}oldsymbol{A}oldsymbol{A}^{-1}oldsymbol{eta} + oldsymbol{e} = oldsymbol{X}(oldsymbol{A} - \hat{oldsymbol{A}}_n)oldsymbol{eta}(oldsymbol{W},oldsymbol{Y}) + oldsymbol{e}$$

is no longer a vector of iid random variables.

c) If  $W = (1 \ W_1)$ , then the W in (3.11) is equal to  $W_1$  in b) above. Since centering does not affect the large sample theory of the OLS estimator by a), often (3.11) does not hold.

d) From the above results,  $\boldsymbol{u}_n = \boldsymbol{z}_n + \boldsymbol{b}_n$  where  $\boldsymbol{z}_n \stackrel{D}{\rightarrow} \boldsymbol{z} \sim N_{p-1}(\boldsymbol{0}, \sigma^2 \boldsymbol{V})$ . Suppose  $H_0: \boldsymbol{\eta}_I = \boldsymbol{0}$  is true where  $\boldsymbol{\eta}_I = (\eta_{i_1}, ..., \eta_{i_k})^T = \boldsymbol{C}\boldsymbol{\eta}$  where the *j*th row of  $\boldsymbol{C}$  has a 1 in the  $i_j$  position, and zeroes elsewhere. Then  $\boldsymbol{C}\boldsymbol{b}_n = \boldsymbol{0}$ , and  $\sqrt{n}\boldsymbol{C}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}} - \boldsymbol{\eta}) \stackrel{D}{\rightarrow} N_k(\boldsymbol{0}, \sigma^2 \boldsymbol{C} \boldsymbol{V} \boldsymbol{C}^T)$ . Hence if the  $(\boldsymbol{Z}, \boldsymbol{W})$  is used as the data,

#### 3.1 The MLR Model

then the OLS output gives correct standard errors for testing  $H_0$ :  $\eta_j = 0$ , but the standard errors are incorrect for obtaining a large sample confidence interval for  $\eta_j \neq 0$ .

Remark 3.7: Variable selection is the search for a subset of predictor variables that can be deleted without important loss of information if n/p is large (and the search for a useful subset of predictors if n/p is not large). Refer to Chapter 2 for variable selection and Equation (2.1) where  $\boldsymbol{x}^T \boldsymbol{\beta} = \boldsymbol{x}_S^T \boldsymbol{\beta}_S +$  $\boldsymbol{x}_{E}^{T}\boldsymbol{\beta}_{E} = \boldsymbol{x}_{S}^{T}\boldsymbol{\beta}_{S}$ . Let p be the number of predictors in the full model, including a constant. Let q = p - 1 be the number of nontrivial predictors in the full model. Let  $a = a_I$  be the number of predictors in the submodel I, including a constant. Let  $k = k_I = a_I - 1$  be the number of nontrivial predictors in the submodel. For submodel I, think of I as indexing the predictors in the model, including the constant. Let A index the nontrivial predictors in the model. Hence I adds the constant (trivial predictor) to the collection of nontrivial predictors in A. In Equation (2.1), there is a "true submodel"  $Y = X_S \beta_S + e$  where all of the elements of  $\beta_S$  are nonzero but all of the elements of  $\beta$  that are not elements of  $\beta_S$  are zero. Then  $a = a_S$  is the number of predictors in that submodel, including a constant, and  $k = k_S$  is the number of active predictors = number of nonnoise variables = number of nontrivial predictors in the true model  $S = I_S$ . Then there are p - a noise variables ( $x_i$  that have coefficient  $\beta_i = 0$ ) in the full model. The true model is generally only known in simulations. For Equation (2.1), we also assume that if  $\boldsymbol{x}^T \boldsymbol{\beta} = \boldsymbol{x}_I^T \boldsymbol{\beta}_I$ , then  $S \subseteq I$ . Hence S is the unique smallest subset of predictors such that  $\mathbf{x}^T \boldsymbol{\beta} = \mathbf{x}_S^T \boldsymbol{\beta}_S$ . Two alternative variable selection models were given by Remark 2.24.

Model selection generates M models. Then a hopefully good model is selected from these M models. Variable selection is a special case of model selection. Many methods for variable and model selection have been suggested for the MLR model. We will consider several R functions including i) forward selection computed with the regsubsets function from the leaps library, ii) principal components regression (PCR) with the pcr function from the pls library, iii) partial least squares (PLS) with the plsr function from the pls library, iv) ridge regression with the cv.glmnet or glmnet function from the glmnet library, v) lasso with the cv.glmnet or glmnet function from the glmnet library, and vi) lasso variable selection which is OLS applied to the lasso active set (nontrivial predictors with nonzero coefficients) and a constant. See Sections 3.2–3.7 and James et al. (2013, ch. 6).

These six methods produce M models and use a criterion to select the final model (e.g.  $C_p$  or 10-fold cross validation (CV)). See Section 3.13. The number of models M depends on the method. Often one of the models is the full model (3.1) that uses all p-1 nontrivial predictors. The full model is (approximately) fit with (ordinary) least squares. For one of the M models, some of the methods use  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}} = \boldsymbol{0}$  and fit the model  $Y_i = \beta_1 + e_i$  with  $\hat{Y}_i \equiv \overline{Y}$  that uses none of the nontrivial predictors. Forward selection, PCR, and PLS

use variables  $v_1 = 1$  (the constant or trivial predictor) and  $v_j = \gamma_j^T x$  that are linear combinations of the predictors for j = 2, ..., p. Model  $I_i$  uses variables  $v_1, v_2, ..., v_i$  for i = 1, ..., M where  $M \leq p$  and often  $M \leq \min(p, n/10)$ . Then M models  $I_i$  are used. (For forward selection and PCR, OLS is used to regress Y (or Z) on  $v_1, ..., v_i$ .) Then a criterion chooses the final submodel  $I_d$  from candidates  $I_1, ..., I_M$ .

**Remark 3.8.** Prediction interval (2.14) used a number d that was often the number of predictors in the selected model. For forward selection, PCR, PLS, lasso, and lasso variable selection, let d be the number of predictors  $v_j = \gamma_j^T x$  in the final model (with nonzero coefficients), including a constant  $v_1$ . For forward selection, lasso, and lasso variable selection,  $v_j$  corresponds to a single nontrivial predictor, say  $v_j = x_j^* = x_{k_j}$ . Another method for obtaining d is to let d = j if j is the degrees of freedom of the selected model if that model was chosen in advance without model or variable selection. Hence d = j is not the model degrees of freedom if model selection was used.

Overfitting or "fitting noise" occurs when there is not enough data to estimate the  $p \times 1$  vector  $\boldsymbol{\beta}$  well with the estimation method, such as OLS. The OLS model is overfitting if n < 5p. When n > p,  $\boldsymbol{X}$  is not invertible, but if n = p, then  $\hat{\boldsymbol{Y}} = \boldsymbol{H}\boldsymbol{Y} = \boldsymbol{X}(\boldsymbol{X}^T\boldsymbol{X})^{-1}\boldsymbol{X}^T\boldsymbol{Y} = \boldsymbol{I}_n\boldsymbol{Y} = \boldsymbol{Y}$  regardless of how bad the predictors are. If n < p, then the OLS program fails or  $\hat{\boldsymbol{Y}} = \boldsymbol{Y}$ : the fitted regression plane interpolates the training data response variables  $Y_1, \dots, Y_n$ . The following rule of thumb is useful for many regression methods. Note that d = p for the full OLS model.

**Rule of thumb 3.1.** We want  $n \ge 10d$  to avoid overfitting. Occasionally n as low as 5d is used, but models with n < 5d are overfitting.

**Remark 3.9.** Use  $Z_n \sim AN_r(\boldsymbol{\mu}_n, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_n)$  to indicate that a normal approximation is used:  $Z_n \approx N_r(\boldsymbol{\mu}_n, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_n)$ . Let a be a constant, let  $\boldsymbol{A}$  be a  $k \times r$  constant matrix (often with full rank  $k \leq r$ ), and let  $\boldsymbol{c}$  be a  $k \times 1$  constant vector. If  $\sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}_n - \boldsymbol{\theta}) \xrightarrow{D} N_r(\boldsymbol{0}, \boldsymbol{V})$ , then  $aZ_n = aI_rZ_n$  with  $\boldsymbol{A} = aI_r$ ,

$$egin{aligned} & a oldsymbol{Z}_n \sim A N_r \left( a oldsymbol{\mu}_n, a^2 oldsymbol{\Sigma}_n 
ight), & ext{and} \quad oldsymbol{A} oldsymbol{Z}_n + oldsymbol{c} \sim A N_k \left( oldsymbol{A} oldsymbol{\mu}_n + oldsymbol{c}, oldsymbol{A} oldsymbol{D}_n + oldsymbol{c} \sim A N_k \left( oldsymbol{A} oldsymbol{ heta}_n + oldsymbol{c}, lpha oldsymbol{A} oldsymbol{ heta}_n + oldsymbol{c} \sim A N_k \left( oldsymbol{A} oldsymbol{ heta}_n + oldsymbol{c}, lpha oldsymbol{A} oldsymbol{ heta}_n + oldsymbol{c} \sim A N_k \left( oldsymbol{A} oldsymbol{ heta}_n + oldsymbol{c} \sim A N_k \left( oldsymbol{A} oldsymbol{ heta}_n + oldsymbol{c}, lpha oldsymbol{A} oldsymbol{ heta}_n + oldsymbol{c} \sim A N_k \left( oldsymbol{A} oldsymbol{ heta}_n + oldsymbol{c}, lpha oldsymbol{A} oldsymbol{ heta}_n + oldsymbol{c} \sim A N_k \left( oldsymbol{A} oldsymbol{ heta}_n + oldsymbol{c}, lpha oldsymbol{A} oldsymbol{ heta}_n + oldsymbol{c} \sim A N_k \left( oldsymbol{A} oldsymbol{ heta}_n + oldsymbol{c}, oldsymbol{A} oldsymbol{A} oldsymbol{ heta}_n + oldsymbol{c} \sim A N_k \left( oldsymbol{A} oldsymbol{ heta}_n + oldsymbol{c}, oldsymbol{A} oldsymbol{ heta}_n + oldsymbol{c} \sim A N_k \left( oldsymbol{A} oldsymbol{ heta}_n + oldsymbol{c}, oldsymbol{A} oldsymbol{ heta}_n + oldsymbol{c} \sim A N_k \left( oldsymbol{A} oldsymbol{ heta}_n + oldsymbol{c}, oldsymbol{A} oldsymbol{ heta}_n + oldsy$$

Theorem 3.3 gives the large sample theory for the OLS full model. Then  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}} \approx N_p(\boldsymbol{\beta}, \sigma^2(\boldsymbol{X}^T\boldsymbol{X})^{-1}))$  or  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}} \sim AN_p(\boldsymbol{\beta}, MSE(\boldsymbol{X}^T\boldsymbol{X})^{-1})).$ 

When minimizing or maximizing a real valued function  $Q(\boldsymbol{\eta})$  of the  $k \times 1$  vector  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ , the solution  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}$  is found by setting the gradient of  $Q(\boldsymbol{\eta})$  equal to **0**. The following definition and lemma follow Graybill (1983, pp. 351-352)

#### 3.1 The MLR Model

closely. Maximum likelihood estimators are examples of estimating equations. There is a vector of parameters  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ , and the gradient of the log likelihood function  $\log L(\boldsymbol{\eta})$  is set to zero. The solution  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}$  is the MLE, an estimator of the parameter vector  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ , but in the log likelihood,  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$  is a dummy variable vector, not the fixed unknown parameter vector.

**Definition 3.4.** Let  $Q(\boldsymbol{\eta})$  be a real valued function of the  $k \times 1$  vector  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ . The gradient of  $Q(\boldsymbol{\eta})$  is the  $k \times 1$  vector

$$egin{aligned} &\bigtriangledown Q = igtarrow Q(oldsymbol{\eta}) = rac{\partial Q}{\partialoldsymbol{\eta}} = rac{\partial Q(oldsymbol{\eta})}{\partialoldsymbol{\eta}} = egin{bmatrix} rac{\partial}{\partial\eta_1}Q(oldsymbol{\eta})\ rac{\partial}{\partial\eta_2}Q(oldsymbol{\eta})\ dots\ rac{\partial}{\partial\eta_k}Q(oldsymbol{\eta})\ dots\ rac{\partial}{\partial\eta_k}Q(oldsymbol{\eta}) \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned}$$

Suppose there is a model with unknown parameter vector  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ . A set of *estimating equations*  $f(\boldsymbol{\eta})$  is used to maximize or minimize  $Q(\boldsymbol{\eta})$  where  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$  is a dummy variable vector.

Often  $f(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \nabla Q$ , and we solve  $f(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \nabla Q \stackrel{set}{=} \mathbf{0}$  for the solution  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}$ , and  $f : \mathbb{R}^k \to \mathbb{R}^k$ . Note that  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}$  is an estimator of the unknown parameter vector  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$  in the model, but  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$  is a dummy variable in  $Q(\boldsymbol{\eta})$ . Hence we could use  $Q(\boldsymbol{b})$  instead of  $Q(\boldsymbol{\eta})$ , but the solution of the estimating equations would still be  $\hat{\boldsymbol{b}} = \hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}$ .

As a mnemonic (memory aid) for the following lemma, note that the derivative  $\frac{d}{dx}ax = \frac{d}{dx}xa = a$  and  $\frac{d}{dx}ax^2 = \frac{d}{dx}xax = 2ax$ .

**Theorem 3.4.** a) If  $Q(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \boldsymbol{a}^T \boldsymbol{\eta} = \boldsymbol{\eta}^T \boldsymbol{a}$  for some  $k \times 1$  constant vector  $\boldsymbol{a}$ , then  $\nabla Q = \boldsymbol{a}$ .

b) If  $Q(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \boldsymbol{\eta}^T \boldsymbol{A} \boldsymbol{\eta}$  for some  $k \times k$  constant matrix  $\boldsymbol{A}$ , then  $\nabla Q = 2\boldsymbol{A} \boldsymbol{\eta}$ . c) If  $Q(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \sum_{i=1}^k |\eta_i| = \|\boldsymbol{\eta}\|_1$ , then  $\nabla Q = \boldsymbol{s} = \boldsymbol{s} \boldsymbol{\eta}$  where  $s_i = \operatorname{sign}(\eta_i)$  where  $\operatorname{sign}(\eta_i) = 1$  if  $\eta_i > 0$  and  $\operatorname{sign}(\eta_i) = -1$  if  $\eta_i < 0$ . This gradient is only defined for  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$  where none of the k values of  $\eta_i$  are equal to 0.

**Example 3.1.** If  $Z = W\eta + e$ , then the OLS estimator minimizes  $Q(\eta) = \|Z - W\eta\|_2^2 = (Z - W\eta)^T (Z - W\eta) = Z^T Z - 2Z^T W\eta + \eta^T (W^T W)\eta$ . Using Theorem 3.4 with  $a^T = Z^T W$  and  $A = W^T W$  shows that  $\nabla Q = -2W^T Z + 2(W^T W)\eta$ . Let  $\nabla Q(\hat{\eta})$  denote the gradient evaluated at  $\hat{\eta}$ . Then the OLS estimator satisfies the normal equations  $(W^T W)\hat{\eta} = W^T Z$ .

**Example 3.2.** The Hebbler (1847) data was collected from n = 26 districts in Prussia in 1843. We will study the relationship between Y = the number of women married to civilians in the district with the predictors  $x_1 = \text{constant}, x_2 = pop =$  the population of the district in 1843,  $x_3 = mmen$  = the number of married civilian men in the district,  $x_4 = mmilmen =$  the

number of married men in the military in the district, and  $x_5 = milwmn =$ the number of women married to husbands in the military in the district. Sometimes the person conducting the survey would not count a spouse if the spouse was not at home. Hence Y is highly correlated but not equal to  $x_3$ . Similarly,  $x_4$  and  $x_5$  are highly correlated but not equal. We expect that  $Y = x_3 + e$  is a good model, but n/p = 5.2 is small. See the following output.

```
ls.print(out)
Residual Standard Error=392.8709
R-Square=0.9999, p-value=0
F-statistic (df=4, 21)=67863.03
          Estimate Std.Err t-value Pr(>|t|)
Intercept 242.3910 263.7263 0.9191
                                       0.3685
            0.0004
                     0.0031 0.1130
                                       0.9111
pop
            0.9995
                     0.0173 57.6490
                                       0.0000
mmen
                     2.6928 -0.0864
mmilmen
           -0.2328
                                       0.9319
            0.1531
                     2.8231 0.0542
                                       0.9572
milwmn
res<-out$res
yhat <-Y-res #d = 5 predictors used including x_1
AERplot2(yhat, Y, res=res, d=5)
#response plot with 90% pointwise PIs
$respi #90% PI for a future residual
[1] -950.4811 1445.2584 #90% PI length = 2395.74
```

## 3.2 Forward Selection

Variable selection methods such as forward selection were covered in Chapter 2 where model  $I_j$  uses j predictors  $x_1^*, ..., x_j^*$  including the constant  $x_1^* \equiv 1$ . If n/p is not large, forward selection can be done as in Chapter 2 except instead of forming p submodels  $I_1, ..., I_p$ , form the sequence of M submodels  $I_1, ..., I_M$  where  $M = \min(\lceil n/J \rceil, p)$  for some positive integer J such as J = 5, 10, or 20. Here  $\lceil x \rceil$  is the smallest integer  $\geq x$ , e.g.,  $\lceil 7.7 \rceil = 8$ . Then for each submodel  $I_j$ , OLS is used to regress Y on  $1, x_2^*, ..., x_j^*$ . Then a criterion chooses which model  $I_d$  from candidates  $I_1, ..., I_M$  is to be used as the final submodel.

**Remark 3.10.** Suppose n/J is an integer. If  $p \le n/J$ , then forward selection fits  $(p-1) + (p-2) + \cdots + 2 + 1 = p(p-1)/2 \approx p^2/2$  models, where p-i models are fit at step i for i = 1, ..., (p-1). If n/J < p, then forward selection uses (n/J)-1 steps and fits  $\approx (p-1)+(p-2)+\cdots+(p-(n/J)+1) = p((n/J)-1)-(1+2+\cdots+((n/J)-1)) =$ 

$$p(\frac{n}{J}-1) - \frac{\frac{n}{J}(\frac{n}{J}-1)}{2} \approx \frac{n}{J} \quad \frac{(2p-\frac{n}{J})}{2}$$

#### 3.2 Forward Selection

models. Thus forward selection can be slow if n and p are both large, although the R package leaps uses a branch and bound algorithm that likely eliminates many of the possible fits. Note that after step i, the model has i + 1 predictors, including the constant.

The R function regsubsets can be used for forward selection if p < n, and if  $p \ge n$  if the maximum number of variables is less than n. Then warning messages are common. Some R code is shown below.

```
#regsubsets works if p < n, e.g. p = n-1, and works
#if p > n with warnings if nvmax is small enough
set.seed(13)
n<-100
p<-200
k<-19 #the first 19 nontrivial predictors are active
J<-5
q <- p-1
b <- 0 * 1:q
b[1:k] <- 1 #beta = (1, 1, ..., 1, 0, 0, ..., 0)^T
x <- matrix(rnorm(n * q), nrow = n, ncol = q)</pre>
y <- 1 + x %*% b + rnorm(n)
nc <- ceiling(n/J)-1 #the constant will also be used
nc <- min(nc,q)
nc <- max(nc,1) #nc is the maximum number of</pre>
#nontrivial predictors used by forward selection
pp <-nc+1 #d = pp is used for PI (2.14)
vars <- as.vector(1:(p-1))</pre>
temp<-regsubsets(x,y,nvmax=nc,method="forward")</pre>
out<-summary(temp)</pre>
num <- length(out$cp)</pre>
mod <- out$which[num,] #use the last model</pre>
#do not need the constant in vin
vin <- vars[mod[-1]]</pre>
outŚrss
 [1] 1496.49625 1342.95915 1214.93174 1068.56668
                           745.35007
     973.36395 855.15436
                                       690.03901
     638.40677
                590.97644
                           542.89273
                                       503.68666
     467.69423 420.94132
                           391.41961
                                       328.62016
     242.66311 178.77573
                            79.91771
out$bic
                                    -29.2685
 [1]
       -9.4032 -15.6232 -21.0367
      -33.9949 -42.3374 -51.4750
                                     -54.5804
                -60.8673 -64.7485
                                     -67.6391
      -57.7525
      -70.4479 -76.3748 -79.0410 -91.9236
     -117.6413 -143.5903 -219.498595
```

```
tem <- lsfit(x[,1:19],y) #last model used the</pre>
sum(tem$resid^2)
                           #first 19 predictors
[1] 79.91771
                            \#SSE(I) = RSS(I)
n \cdot \log(out \cdot srss[19]/n) + 20 \cdot \log(n)
[1] 69.68613
                            #BIC(I)
for(i in 1:19) #a formula for BIC(I)
print(n \times \log(out \times rss[i]/n) + (i+1) \times \log(n))
bic <- c(279.7815, 273.5616, 268.1480, 259.9162,
255.1898, 246.8474, 237.7097, 234.6043, 231.4322,
228.3175, 224.4362, 221.5456, 218.7368, 212.8099,
210.1437, 197.2611, 171.5435, 145.5944, 69.6861)
tem<-lsfit(bic,out$bic)</pre>
tem$coef
   Intercept
                          Х
-289.1846831 0.9999998 #bic - 289.1847 = out$bic
xx <- 1:min(length(out$bic),p-1)+1</pre>
ebic <- out$bic+2*log(dbinom(x=xx, size=p, prob=0.5))</pre>
#actually EBIC(I) - 2 p log(2).
```

**Example 3.2**, continued. The output below shows results from forward selection for the marry data. The minimum  $C_p$  model  $I_{min}$  uses a constant and *mmem*. The forward selection PIs are shorter than the OLS full model PIs.

```
library(leaps);Y <- marry[,3]; X <- marry[,-3]</pre>
temp<-regsubsets(X,Y,method="forward")</pre>
out<-summary(temp)</pre>
Selection Algorithm: forward
         pop mmen mmilmen milwmn
  (1)"""*""
                         1
  (1)"""*""*"
                          .....
2
  (1)"*""*" "*"
                          .....
3
4 (1) "*" "*" "*"
                         " * "
out$cp
[1] -0.8268967 1.0151462 3.0029429 5.0000000
#mmen and a constant = Imin
mincp <- out$which[out$cp==min(out$cp),]</pre>
#do not need the constant in vin
vin <- vars[mincp[-1]]</pre>
sub <- lsfit(X[,vin],Y)</pre>
ls.print(sub)
Residual Standard Error=369.0087
R-Square=0.9999
F-statistic (df=1, 24)=307694.4
          Estimate Std.Err t-value Pr(>|t|)
Intercept 241.5445 190.7426
                             1.2663 0.2175
```

#### 3.3 Principal Components Regression

```
X 1.0010 0.0018 554.7021 0.0000
res<-sub$res
yhat<-Y-res #d = 2 predictors used including x_1
AERplot2(yhat,Y,res=res,d=2)
#response plot with 90% pointwise PIs
$respi #90% PI for a future residual
[1] -778.2763 1336.4416 #length 2114.72</pre>
```

Consider forward selection where  $\boldsymbol{x}_I$  is  $a \times 1$ . Underfitting occurs if S is not a subset of I so  $\boldsymbol{x}_I$  is missing important predictors. A special case of underfitting is  $d = a < a_S$ . Overfitting for forward selection occurs if i) n < 5a so there is not enough data to estimate the a parameters in  $\boldsymbol{\beta}_I$  well, or ii)  $S \subseteq I$  but  $S \neq I$ . Overfitting is serious if n < 5a, but "not much of a problem" if n > Jp where J = 10 or 20 for many data sets. Underfitting is a serious problem for estimating the full model  $\boldsymbol{\beta}$ . Let  $Y_i = \boldsymbol{x}_{I,i}^T \boldsymbol{\beta}_I + e_{I,i}$ . Then  $V(e_{I,i})$  may not be a constant  $\sigma^2$ :  $V(e_{I,i})$  could depend on case i, and the model may no longer be linear. Check model I with response and residual plots.

Forward selection is a *shrinkage* method: p models are produced and except for the full model, some  $|\hat{\beta}_i|$  are shrunk to 0. Lasso and ridge regression are also shrinkage methods. Ridge regression is a shrinkage method, but  $|\hat{\beta}_i|$  is not shrunk to 0. Shrinkage methods that shrink  $\hat{\beta}_i$  to 0 are also variable selection methods. See Sections 3.5, 3.6, and 3.8.

**Definition 3.5.** A fitted or population regression model is *sparse* if a of the predictors are active (have nonzero  $\hat{\beta}_i$  or  $\beta_i$ ) where  $n \ge Ja$  with  $J \ge 10$ . Otherwise the model is *nonsparse*. A high dimensional population regression model is *abundant* or *dense* if the regression information is spread out among the p predictors (nearly all of the predictors are active). Hence an abundant model is a nonsparse model.

Suppose the population model has  $\beta_S$  an  $a_S \times 1$  vector, including a constant. Then  $a = a_S - 1$  for the population model. Note that  $a = a_S$  if the model does not include a constant. See equation (2.1).

# 3.3 Principal Components Regression

Some notation for eigenvalues, eigenvectors, orthonormal eigenvectors, positive definite matrices, and positive semidefinite matrices will be useful before defining principal components regression, which is also called principal component regression.

**Notation:** Recall that a square symmetric  $p \times p$  matrix A has an *eigenvalue*  $\lambda$  with corresponding *eigenvector*  $x \neq 0$  if

#### **3 Statistical Learning Alternatives to OLS**

$$Ax = \lambda x. \tag{3.12}$$

The eigenvalues of A are real since A is symmetric. Note that if constant  $c \neq 0$  and x is an eigenvector of A, then c x is an eigenvector of A. Let e be an eigenvector of A with unit length  $||e||_2 = \sqrt{e^T e} = 1$ . Then e and -e are eigenvectors with unit length, and A has p eigenvalue eigenvector pairs  $(\lambda_1, e_1), (\lambda_2, e_2), ..., (\lambda_p, e_p)$ . Since A is symmetric, the eigenvectors are chosen such that the  $e_i$  are orthonormal:  $e_i^T e_i = 1$  and  $e_i^T e_j = 0$  for  $i \neq j$ . The symmetric matrix A is positive definite iff all of its eigenvalues are positive, and positive semidefinite iff all of its eigenvalues are nonnegative. If A is positive semidefinite, let  $\lambda_1 \geq \lambda_2 \geq \cdots \geq \lambda_p \geq 0$ . If A is positive definite, then  $\lambda_p > 0$ .

**Theorem 3.5.** Let  $\boldsymbol{A}$  be a  $p \times p$  symmetric matrix with eigenvector eigenvalue pairs  $(\lambda_1, \boldsymbol{e}_1), (\lambda_2, \boldsymbol{e}_2), ..., (\lambda_p, \boldsymbol{e}_p)$  where  $\boldsymbol{e}_i^T \boldsymbol{e}_i = 1$  and  $\boldsymbol{e}_i^T \boldsymbol{e}_j = 0$  if  $i \neq j$  for i = 1, ..., p. Then the spectral decomposition of  $\boldsymbol{A}$  is

$$oldsymbol{A} = \sum_{i=1}^p \lambda_i oldsymbol{e}_i oldsymbol{e}_i^T = \lambda_1 oldsymbol{e}_1 oldsymbol{e}_1^T + \dots + \lambda_p oldsymbol{e}_p oldsymbol{e}_p^T.$$

Using the same notation as Johnson and Wichern (1988, pp. 50-51), let  $\boldsymbol{P} = [\boldsymbol{e}_1 \ \boldsymbol{e}_2 \ \cdots \ \boldsymbol{e}_p]$  be the  $p \times p$  orthogonal matrix with *i*th column  $\boldsymbol{e}_i$ . Then  $\boldsymbol{P}\boldsymbol{P}^T = \boldsymbol{P}^T\boldsymbol{P} = \boldsymbol{I}$ . Let  $\boldsymbol{\Lambda} = \text{diag}(\lambda_1, ..., \lambda_p)$  and let  $\boldsymbol{\Lambda}^{1/2} = \text{diag}(\sqrt{\lambda_1}, ..., \sqrt{\lambda_p})$ . If  $\boldsymbol{A}$  is a positive definite  $p \times p$  symmetric matrix with spectral decomposition  $\boldsymbol{A} = \sum_{i=1}^p \lambda_i \boldsymbol{e}_i \boldsymbol{e}_i^T$ , then  $\boldsymbol{A} = \boldsymbol{P}\boldsymbol{\Lambda}\boldsymbol{P}^T$  and

$$oldsymbol{A}^{-1} = oldsymbol{P}oldsymbol{\Lambda}^{-1}oldsymbol{P}^T = \sum_{i=1}^p rac{1}{\lambda_i}oldsymbol{e}_ioldsymbol{e}_i^T$$

**Theorem 3.6.** Let  $\boldsymbol{A}$  be a positive definite  $p \times p$  symmetric matrix with spectral decomposition  $\boldsymbol{A} = \sum_{i=1}^{p} \lambda_i \boldsymbol{e}_i \boldsymbol{e}_i^T$ . The square root matrix  $\boldsymbol{A}^{1/2} = \boldsymbol{P} \boldsymbol{A}^{1/2} \boldsymbol{P}^T$  is a positive definite symmetric matrix such that  $\boldsymbol{A}^{1/2} \boldsymbol{A}^{1/2} = \boldsymbol{A}$ .

Let  $Y = \alpha + \boldsymbol{x}^T \boldsymbol{\beta} + e$ . Consider the correlation matrix  $\boldsymbol{R}_{\boldsymbol{x}}$  of the p nontrivial predictors  $x_1, ..., x_p$ . Suppose  $\boldsymbol{R}_{\boldsymbol{x}}$  has eigenvalue eigenvector pairs  $(\hat{\lambda}_1, \hat{\boldsymbol{e}}_1), ..., (\hat{\lambda}_K, \hat{\boldsymbol{e}}_K)$  where  $\hat{\lambda}_1 \geq \hat{\lambda}_2 \geq \cdots \geq \hat{\lambda}_K \geq 0$  where  $K = \min(n, p)$ . Then  $\boldsymbol{R}_{\boldsymbol{x}} \hat{\boldsymbol{e}}_i = \hat{\lambda}_i \hat{\boldsymbol{e}}_i$  for i = 1, ..., K. Since  $\boldsymbol{R}_{\boldsymbol{x}}$  is a symmetric positive semidefinite matrix, the  $\hat{\lambda}_i$  are real and nonnegative.

The eigenvectors  $\hat{\boldsymbol{e}}_i$  are orthonormal:  $\hat{\boldsymbol{e}}_i^T \hat{\boldsymbol{e}}_i = 1$  and  $\hat{\boldsymbol{e}}_i^T \hat{\boldsymbol{e}}_j = 0$  for  $i \neq j$ . If the eigenvalues are unique, then  $\hat{\boldsymbol{e}}_i$  and  $-\hat{\boldsymbol{e}}_i$  are the only orthonormal eigenvectors corresponding to  $\hat{\lambda}_i$ . For example, the eigenvalue eigenvector pairs can be found using the singular value decomposition of the matrix  $\boldsymbol{W}_g/\sqrt{n-g}$  where  $\boldsymbol{W}_g$  is the data matrix of standardized cases: the *i*th row of  $\boldsymbol{W}_g$  is  $\boldsymbol{w}_i^T$ , the sample covariance matrix 3.3 Principal Components Regression

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}\boldsymbol{w} = \frac{\boldsymbol{W}_{g}^{T}\boldsymbol{W}_{g}}{n-g} = \frac{1}{n-g}\sum_{i=1}^{n}(\boldsymbol{w}_{i}-\overline{\boldsymbol{w}})(\boldsymbol{w}_{i}-\overline{\boldsymbol{w}})^{T} = \frac{1}{n-g}\sum_{i=1}^{n}\boldsymbol{w}_{i}\boldsymbol{w}_{i}^{T} = \boldsymbol{R}_{\boldsymbol{x}},$$

and usually g = 0 or g = 1. If n > K = p, then the spectral decomposition of  $\mathbf{R}_{\mathbf{x}}$  is

$$oldsymbol{R}_{oldsymbol{x}} = \sum_{i=1}^p \hat{\lambda}_i \hat{oldsymbol{e}}_i \hat{oldsymbol{e}}_i^T = \hat{\lambda}_1 \hat{oldsymbol{e}}_1 \hat{oldsymbol{e}}_1^T + \dots + \hat{\lambda}_p \hat{oldsymbol{e}}_p \hat{oldsymbol{e}}_p^T,$$

and  $\sum_{i=1}^{p} \hat{\lambda}_i = p.$ 

Let  $\boldsymbol{w}_1, ..., \boldsymbol{w}_n$  denote the *n* standardized cases of nontrivial predictors. See Remark 3.3. Then the *K* principal components corresponding to the *j*th case  $\boldsymbol{w}_j$  are  $P_{j1} = \hat{\boldsymbol{e}}_1^T \boldsymbol{w}_j, ..., P_{jK} = \hat{\boldsymbol{e}}_K^T \boldsymbol{w}_j$ . Let the transformed case, that uses *K* principal components, corresponding to  $\boldsymbol{w}_j$  be  $\boldsymbol{v}_j = (P_{j1}, ..., P_{jK})^T$ . Following Hastie et al. (2009, p. 66), the *i*th eigenvector  $\hat{\boldsymbol{e}}_i$  is known as the *i*th principal component direction or Karhunen Loeve direction of  $\boldsymbol{W}_g$ .

Principal components have a nice geometric interpretation if n > K = p. If n > K and  $\mathbf{R}_{\mathbf{x}}$  is nonsingular, then the hyperellipsoid

$$\{\boldsymbol{w}|D_{\boldsymbol{w}}^2(\boldsymbol{0},\boldsymbol{R}_{\boldsymbol{x}}) \leq h^2\} = \{\boldsymbol{w}: \boldsymbol{w}^T \boldsymbol{R}_{\boldsymbol{x}}^{-1} \boldsymbol{w} \leq h^2\}$$

is centered at **0**. The volume of the hyperellipsoid is

$$\frac{2\pi^{K/2}}{K\Gamma(K/2)}|\boldsymbol{R}_{\boldsymbol{x}}|^{1/2}h^{K}.$$

Then points at squared distance  $\boldsymbol{w}^T \boldsymbol{R}_{\boldsymbol{x}}^{-1} \boldsymbol{w} = h^2$  from the origin lie on the hyperellipsoid centered at the origin whose axes are given by the eigenvectors  $\hat{\boldsymbol{e}}_i$  where the half length in the direction of  $\hat{\boldsymbol{e}}_i$  is  $h\sqrt{\hat{\lambda}_i}$ . Let j = 1, ..., n. Then the first principal component  $P_{j1}$  is obtained by projecting the  $\boldsymbol{w}_j$  on the (longest) major axis of the hyperellipsoid, the second principal component  $P_{j2}$  is obtained by projecting the  $\boldsymbol{w}_j$  on the next longest axis of the hyperellipsoid, ..., and the (p)th principal component  $P_{j,p}$  is obtained by projecting the  $\boldsymbol{w}_j$  on the (shortest) minor axis of the hyperellipsoid. Examine Figure 2.3 for two ellipsoids with 2 nontrivial predictors. The axes of the hyperellipsoid are a rotation of the usual axes about the origin.

Let the random variable  $V_i$  correspond to the *i*th principal component, and let the *i*th principal component vector  $\mathbf{c}_i = (P_{1i}, ..., P_{ni})^T = (V_{1i}, ..., V_{ni})^T$ be the observed data for  $V_i$ . Let g = 1. Then the sample mean

$$\overline{V}_i = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=1}^n V_{ki} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=1}^n \hat{\boldsymbol{e}}_i^T \boldsymbol{w}_k = \hat{\boldsymbol{e}}_i^T \overline{\boldsymbol{w}} = \hat{\boldsymbol{e}}_i^T \boldsymbol{0} = 0,$$

and the sample covariance of  $V_i$  and  $V_j$  is  $Cov(V_i, V_j) =$ 

**3 Statistical Learning Alternatives to OLS** 

$$\frac{1}{n}\sum_{k=1}^{n}(V_{ki}-\overline{V}_{i})(V_{kj}-\overline{V}_{j}) = \frac{1}{n}\sum_{k=1}^{n}\hat{\boldsymbol{e}}_{i}^{T}\boldsymbol{w}_{k}\boldsymbol{w}_{k}^{T}\hat{\boldsymbol{e}}_{j} = \hat{\boldsymbol{e}}_{i}^{T}\boldsymbol{R}_{\boldsymbol{x}}\hat{\boldsymbol{e}}_{j}$$

 $= \hat{\lambda}_j \hat{e}_i^T \hat{e}_j = 0$  for  $i \neq j$  since the sample covariance matrix of the standardized data is

$$\frac{1}{n}\sum_{k=1}^{n}\boldsymbol{w}_{k}\boldsymbol{w}_{k}^{T}=\boldsymbol{R}_{\boldsymbol{\mathcal{X}}}$$

and  $\mathbf{R}_{\mathbf{x}}\hat{\mathbf{e}}_j = \hat{\lambda}_j\hat{\mathbf{e}}_j$ . Hence  $V_i$  and  $V_j$  are uncorrelated.

In the following definition, note that  $\mathbf{c}_i^T \mathbf{c}_j = \hat{\mathbf{e}}_i^T \mathbf{W}^T \mathbf{W} \hat{\mathbf{e}}_j = n \hat{\mathbf{e}}_i \mathbf{R}_{\mathbf{x}} \hat{\mathbf{e}}_j = n \lambda_j \hat{\mathbf{e}}_i^T \hat{\mathbf{e}}_j = 0$  for  $i \neq j$ . Thus  $\mathbf{c}_i$  and  $\mathbf{c}_j$  are orthogonal:  $\mathbf{c}_i \perp \mathbf{c}_j$  for  $i \neq j$ . Also,  $\mathbf{c}_i^T \mathbf{1} = (\sum_{k=1}^n \mathbf{w}_k) \hat{\mathbf{e}}_i = \mathbf{0}^T \hat{\mathbf{e}}_i = 0$  since the standardized predictor variables sum to 0. The *i*th principle component vector  $\mathbf{c}_i$  corresponds to the derived predictor  $V_i$ , for i = 1, ..., p - 1.

**Definition 3.6.** Consider the standardized model  $\mathbf{Z} = \mathbf{W}\boldsymbol{\beta}_{OLS} + \boldsymbol{\epsilon}$  where  $Y = \alpha + \boldsymbol{x}^T\boldsymbol{\beta} + \boldsymbol{e}$ . Let

$$oldsymbol{v}_i = \hat{oldsymbol{A}}_{k,n}oldsymbol{w}_i = egin{pmatrix} oldsymbol{w}_i^T \hat{oldsymbol{e}}_1 \ dots \ oldsymbol{w}_i^T \hat{oldsymbol{e}}_k \end{pmatrix} = egin{pmatrix} \hat{oldsymbol{e}}_1^T oldsymbol{w}_i \ dots \ oldsymbol{e}_k^T oldsymbol{w}_i \end{pmatrix} ext{ where } \hat{oldsymbol{A}}_{k,n} = egin{pmatrix} oldsymbol{e}_1^T \ dots \ oldsymbol{e}_k^T \end{pmatrix}.$$

Let

$$oldsymbol{c}_i = oldsymbol{W} \hat{oldsymbol{e}}_i = egin{pmatrix} oldsymbol{w}_1^T \hat{oldsymbol{e}}_i \ dots \ oldsymbol{w}_n^T \hat{oldsymbol{e}}_i \end{pmatrix}$$

be the *i*th principle component vector for i = 1, ..., p. Principal components regression (PCR) uses OLS regression on the principal component vectors of the correlation matrix  $\mathbf{R}_{\boldsymbol{x}}$ . Hence PCR uses linear combinations of the standardized data as predictors. Let

$$oldsymbol{V}_k = (oldsymbol{c}_1,...,oldsymbol{c}_k) = egin{pmatrix} oldsymbol{v}_1^T \ dots \ oldsymbol{v}_n^T \end{pmatrix} = oldsymbol{W} \hat{oldsymbol{A}}_{k,n}^T$$

for k = 1, ..., p. Let the working OLS model

$$oldsymbol{Z} = oldsymbol{V}_k oldsymbol{\gamma}_k + oldsymbol{\epsilon} = oldsymbol{W}oldsymbol{eta}_{kPCR} + oldsymbol{\epsilon}$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\epsilon}$  depends on the model. Then  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{kPCR}$  is the k-component PCR estimator for k = 1, ..., p. The model selection estimator chooses one of the k-component estimators, e.g. using a holdout sample or cross validation, and will be denoted by  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{MSPCR}$ .

#### 3.3 Principal Components Regression

**Remark 3.11.** a) The set of  $p \times 1$  vectors  $\{(1, 0, ..., 0)^T, (0, 1, 0, ..., 0)^T, (0, ..., 0, 1)^T\}$  is the standard basis for  $\mathbb{R}^p$ . The set of vectors  $\{\hat{\boldsymbol{e}}_1, ..., \hat{\boldsymbol{e}}_p\}$  is also a basis for  $\mathbb{R}^p$ .

b) Let  $\hat{\gamma}_k = (\hat{\gamma}_1, ..., \hat{\gamma}_k)^T$ . Since the columns of  $V_k$  are orthogonal,  $c_i \perp c_j$  for  $i \neq j$ ,

$$\hat{\gamma}_i = rac{oldsymbol{c}_i^Toldsymbol{Z}}{oldsymbol{c}_i^Toldsymbol{c}_i} = rac{oldsymbol{c}_i^Toldsymbol{Y}}{oldsymbol{c}_i^Toldsymbol{c}_i}$$

c) Since  $\hat{\boldsymbol{Z}} = \boldsymbol{V}_k \hat{\boldsymbol{\gamma}}_k + \boldsymbol{r} = \boldsymbol{W} \hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n}^T \hat{\boldsymbol{\gamma}}_k + \boldsymbol{r} = \boldsymbol{W} \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{kPCR} + \boldsymbol{r}$ , where  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{kPCR} = \hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n}^T \hat{\boldsymbol{\gamma}}_k$ . By Remark 3.2,

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\gamma}}_k = \hat{\boldsymbol{\varSigma}}_{\boldsymbol{v}}^{-1} \hat{\boldsymbol{\varSigma}}_{\boldsymbol{v}Z} = [\hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n} \hat{\boldsymbol{\varSigma}}_{\boldsymbol{w}} \hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n}^T]^{-1} \hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n} \hat{\boldsymbol{\varSigma}}_{\boldsymbol{w}Z} =$$
 $[\hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n} \hat{\boldsymbol{\varSigma}}_{\boldsymbol{w}} \hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n}^T]^{-1} \hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n} \hat{\boldsymbol{\varSigma}}_{\boldsymbol{w}} \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS}(\boldsymbol{w}, Z).$ 

Thus

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{kPCR} = \hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n}^T \hat{\boldsymbol{\gamma}}_k = \hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n}^T [\hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n} \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{w}} \hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n}^T]^{-1} \hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n} \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{w}} \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS}(\boldsymbol{w}, Z).$$

Note that  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{pPCR} = \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS}(\boldsymbol{w}, Z).$ 

d) Let  $\boldsymbol{e}_i = \boldsymbol{e}_i(\hat{\boldsymbol{\rho}}_{\boldsymbol{x}})$  be the *i*th eigenvector of the population correlation matrix  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\rho}}_{\boldsymbol{x}}$  of the  $\boldsymbol{x}$ , and let

$$oldsymbol{A}_k = egin{pmatrix} oldsymbol{e}_1^T \ dots \ oldsymbol{e}_i^T \end{pmatrix}.$$

It is possible that  $\hat{\boldsymbol{e}}_{i,n}$  is arbitrarily close to  $\boldsymbol{e}_i$  for some values of n and arbitrarily close to  $-\boldsymbol{e}_i$  for other values of n so that  $\hat{\boldsymbol{e}}_i \equiv \hat{\boldsymbol{e}}_{i,n}$  oscillates and does not converge in probability to either  $\boldsymbol{e}_i$  or  $-\boldsymbol{e}_i$ . Hence we can not say that the *i*th eigenvector  $\hat{\boldsymbol{e}}_i = \hat{\boldsymbol{e}}_{i,n} \xrightarrow{P} \boldsymbol{e}_i$  or that  $\boldsymbol{A}_{k,n} \xrightarrow{P} \boldsymbol{A}_k$ . If  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}} \xrightarrow{P} c\boldsymbol{\Sigma}$ for some constant c > 0, and if the eigenvalues  $\lambda_1 > \cdots > \lambda_p > 0$  of  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}$  are unique, then the absolute value of the correlation of  $\hat{\boldsymbol{e}}_j$  with  $\boldsymbol{e}_j$  converges to 1 in probability:  $|\operatorname{corr}(\hat{\boldsymbol{e}}_j, \boldsymbol{e}_j)| \xrightarrow{P} 1$ . See Olive (2017b, p. 190). Let  $\boldsymbol{\gamma}_k$  be the population vector from the OLS regression on the principal component vectors of the population correlation matrix  $\boldsymbol{\rho}_{\boldsymbol{x}}$ . Then  $\boldsymbol{\gamma}_k$  and  $\boldsymbol{A}_k$  are not unique since columns of  $\boldsymbol{A}_k$  and elements of  $\boldsymbol{\gamma}_k$  can be multiplied by -1(an orthonormal eigenvector can be  $\boldsymbol{e}_i$  or  $-\boldsymbol{e}_i$ ), but if a column  $\boldsymbol{e}_j$  of  $\boldsymbol{A}_k$  is multiplied by -1 then the *j*th element of  $\boldsymbol{\gamma}_{k,j}$  is multiplied by -1 so  $\boldsymbol{A}_k^T \boldsymbol{\gamma}_k$ .

$$\boldsymbol{\beta}_{kPCR} = \boldsymbol{A}_k^T \boldsymbol{\phi}_k = \boldsymbol{A}_k^T [\boldsymbol{A}_k \boldsymbol{\rho}_{\boldsymbol{x}} \boldsymbol{A}_k^T]^{-1} \boldsymbol{A}_k \boldsymbol{\rho}_{\boldsymbol{x}} \boldsymbol{\beta}_{OLS}(\boldsymbol{w}, Z).$$

See Helland and Almøy (1994).

e) In general,  $\beta_{kPCR}$  estimates  $\beta_{kPCR} \neq \beta_{OLS}(w, Z)$  unless k = p. Using standardized predictors and estimated eigenvectors likely causes problems for finding a CLT, as in Remark 3.6.

f) Generally there is no reason why the "predictors" should be ranked from best to worst by  $V_1, V_2, ..., V_k$ . For example, the last few principal component vectors (and a constant) could be much better for prediction than the other principal component vectors. See Jolliffe (1983) and Cook and Forzani (2008).

g) Suppose  $\sum_{i=1}^{J} \hat{\lambda}_i \ge q(p)$  where  $0.5 \le q \le 1$ , e.g. q = 0.8 where J is a lot smaller than p. Then the J predictors  $V_1, ..., V_J$  capture much of the information of the standardized nontrivial predictors  $w_1, ..., w_p$ . Then regressing Y on  $1, V_1, ..., V_J$  may be competitive with regressing Y on  $w_1, ..., w_p$ . PCR is equivalent to OLS on the full model when Y is regressed on a constant and all K = p of the principal components. PCR can also be useful if X is singular or nearly singular (ill conditioned).

h) See section 9.1 for computing a classical principal component analysis on the standardized data when n < p.

**Example 3.2**, continued. The PCR output below shows results for the marry data where 10-fold CV was used. The OLS full model was selected.

```
library(pls); y <- marry[,3]; x <- marry[,-3]</pre>
z <- as.data.frame(cbind(y,x))</pre>
out<-pcr(y~.,data=z,scale=T,validation="CV")</pre>
tem<-MSEP(out)
tem
              1 comps
                         2 comps 3 comps 4 comps
   (Int)
CV 1.743e+09 449479706 8181251 371775
                                            197132
cvmse<-tem$val[,,1:(out$ncomp+1)][1,]</pre>
nc <-max(which.min(cvmse)-1,1)</pre>
res <- out$residuals[,,nc]</pre>
yhat <-y-res #d = 5 predictors used including constant
AERplot2(yhat, y, res=res, d=5)
#response plot with 90% pointwise PIs
$respi #90% PI same as OLS full model
-950.4811 1445.2584 #PI length = 2395.74
```

# 3.4 Partial Least Squares

Consider the MLR model  $Y_i = \alpha + \boldsymbol{x}_i^T \boldsymbol{\beta} + e_i = \alpha + x_{i,1} \boldsymbol{\beta}_1 + \dots + x_{i,p} \boldsymbol{\beta}_p + e_i$ for  $i = 1, \dots, n$ . Principal components regression (PCR) and partial least squares (PLS) models use p linear combinations  $\boldsymbol{\eta}_1^T \boldsymbol{x}, \dots, \boldsymbol{\eta}_p^T \boldsymbol{x}$ . Then there are p conditional distributions

$$egin{aligned} Y | oldsymbol{\eta}_1^T oldsymbol{x} \ Y | (oldsymbol{\eta}_1^T oldsymbol{x}, oldsymbol{\eta}_2^T oldsymbol{x}) \ dots \ Y | (oldsymbol{\eta}_1^T oldsymbol{x}, oldsymbol{\eta}_2^T oldsymbol{x}, \dots, oldsymbol{\eta}_p^T oldsymbol{x}) \ dots \ Y | (oldsymbol{\eta}_1^T oldsymbol{x}, oldsymbol{\eta}_2^T oldsymbol{x}, \dots, oldsymbol{\eta}_p^T oldsymbol{x}) \end{aligned}$$

Estimating the  $\boldsymbol{\eta}_i$  and performing the ordinary least squares (OLS) regression of Y on  $(\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_1^T \boldsymbol{x}, \hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_2^T \boldsymbol{x}, ..., \hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_k^T \boldsymbol{x})$  and a constant gives the k-component estimator, e.g. the k-component PLS estimator  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{kPLS}$  or the k-component PCR estimator, for k = 1, ..., J where  $J \leq p$  and the p-component estimator is the OLS estimator  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS}$ . Denote the one component PLS (OPLS) estimator by  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OPLS}$ . The model selection estimator chooses one of the k-component estimators, e.g. using a holdout sample or cross validation, and will be denoted by  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{MSPLS}$ . For the OPLS estimator,  $\boldsymbol{\eta}_1 = \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}Y}$  and  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_1 = \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}Y}$ . See Sections 3.9 and 3.10 for more on the OPLS estimator.

**Remark 3.12.** Olive and Zhang (2023) showed that  $\beta_{kPLS}$  estimates  $\beta_{kPLS}$ , and in general,  $\beta_{kPLS} \neq \beta_{OLS}$  for k < p. In particular,  $\beta_{OPLS} \neq \beta_{OLS}$  except under very strong regularity conditions. The PLS literature incorrectly suggests that  $\beta_{kPLS} = \beta_{OLS}$ , under mild regularity conditions, for  $1 \leq k < p$  if p is fixed. Also see Chun and Keleş (2010), Cook (2018), Cook et al. (2013), and Cook and Forzani (2018, 2019).

Now consider the MLR model  $Y = \mathbf{x}^T \boldsymbol{\beta} + e = \beta_1 + x_2 \beta_2 + \dots + x_p \beta - p + e$ . Then PLS uses variables  $v_1 = 1$  (the constant or trivial predictor) and "PLS components"  $v_j = \boldsymbol{\gamma}_j^T \mathbf{x}$  for j = 2, ..., p. Next let the response Y be used with the standardized predictors  $W_j$ . Let the "PLS components"  $V_j = \hat{\boldsymbol{g}}_j^T \boldsymbol{w}$ . Let model  $J_i$  contain  $V_1, ..., V_i$ . Often k-fold cross validation is used to pick the PLS model from  $J_1, ..., J_M$ . PLS seeks directions  $\hat{\boldsymbol{g}}_j$  such that the PLS components  $V_j$  are highly correlated with Y, subject to being uncorrelated with other PLS components  $V_i$  for  $i \neq j$ . Note that PCR components are formed without using Y.

Following Hastie et al. (2009, pp. 80-81), let  $\boldsymbol{W} = [\boldsymbol{s}_1, ..., \boldsymbol{s}_{p-1}]$  so  $\boldsymbol{s}_j$  is the vector corresponding to the standardized *j*th nontrivial predictor. Let  $\hat{b}_{1i} = \boldsymbol{s}_i^T \boldsymbol{Y}$  be *n* times the least squares coefficient from regressing  $\boldsymbol{Y}$  on  $\boldsymbol{s}_i$ . Then the first PLS direction  $\hat{\boldsymbol{b}}_1 = (\hat{b}_{11}, ..., \hat{b}_{1,p-1})^T$ . Note that  $\boldsymbol{W}\hat{\boldsymbol{b}}_1 = (V_{11}, ..., V_{1n})^T = \boldsymbol{p}_1$  is the 1st PLS component. This process is repeated using matrices  $\boldsymbol{W}^k = [\boldsymbol{s}_1^k, ..., \boldsymbol{s}_{p-1}^k]$  where  $\boldsymbol{W}^0 = \boldsymbol{W}$  and  $\boldsymbol{W}^k$  is orthogonalized with respect to  $\boldsymbol{p}_k$  for k = 1, ..., p-2. So  $\boldsymbol{s}_j^k = \boldsymbol{s}_j^{k-1} - [\boldsymbol{p}_k^T \boldsymbol{s}_j^{k-1}/(\boldsymbol{p}_k^T \boldsymbol{p}_k)]\boldsymbol{p}_k$  for j =1, ..., p-1. Note that  $\boldsymbol{W}\hat{\boldsymbol{b}}_i = (V_{i1}, ..., V_{in})^T = \boldsymbol{p}_i$  is the *i*th PLS component. If the PLS model  $I_i$  uses a constant and PLS components  $V_1, ..., V_{i-1}$ , let  $\hat{\boldsymbol{Y}}_{I_i}$  be the predicted values from the PLS model using  $I_i$ . Then  $\hat{\boldsymbol{Y}}_{I_i} = \hat{\boldsymbol{Y}}_{I_{i-1}} + \hat{\theta}_i \boldsymbol{p}_i$ where  $\hat{\boldsymbol{Y}}_{I_0} = \overline{\boldsymbol{Y}} \mathbf{1}$  and  $\hat{\theta}_i = \boldsymbol{p}_i^T \boldsymbol{Y}/(\boldsymbol{p}_i^T \boldsymbol{p}_i)$ . Since linear combinations of  $\boldsymbol{w}$  are linear combinations of  $\boldsymbol{x}, \{\boldsymbol{Y}} = \boldsymbol{X}\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{PLS,I_j}$  where  $I_j$  uses a constant and the

#### **3 Statistical Learning Alternatives to OLS**

first j - 1 PLS components. If j = p - 1, then the PLS model  $I_p$  is the OLS full model.

**Example 3.2**, continued. The PLS output below shows results for the marry data where 10-fold CV was used. The OLS full model was selected.

```
library(pls); y <- marry[,3]; x <- marry[,-3]</pre>
z <- as.data.frame(cbind(y,x))</pre>
out<-plsr(y~.,data=z,scale=T,validation="CV")</pre>
tem<-MSEP (out)
tem
                         2 comps 3 comps 4 comps
   (Int)
              1 comps
CV 1.743e+09 256433719 6301482 249366 206508
cvmse<-tem$val[,,1:(out$ncomp+1)][1,]
nc <-max(which.min(cvmse)-1,1)</pre>
res <- out$residuals[,,nc]</pre>
yhat<-y-res #d = 5 predictors used including constant</pre>
AERplot2 (yhat, y, res=res, d=5)
$respi #90% PI same as OLS full model
-950.4811 1445.2584 #PI length = 2395.74
```

Let  $Y = \alpha + \boldsymbol{x}^T \boldsymbol{\beta}_{kPLS} + \epsilon$  be a working model. Let  $\boldsymbol{X} = (\mathbf{1} \ \boldsymbol{X}_1)$ . An equivalent way to formulate PLS is to form  $\boldsymbol{b}_j$  iteratively where  $\boldsymbol{b}_k = \arg \max_{\boldsymbol{b}} \{ [corr(\boldsymbol{Y}, \boldsymbol{X}_1 \boldsymbol{b})]^2 V(\boldsymbol{X}_1 \boldsymbol{b}) \}$  subject to  $\boldsymbol{b}^T \boldsymbol{b} = 1$  and  $\boldsymbol{b}^T \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}} \boldsymbol{b}_j = 0$  for j = 1, ..., k - 1. Let the  $\hat{\boldsymbol{b}}_j$  be the estimates of  $\boldsymbol{b}_j$ , and perform the OLS regression of  $\boldsymbol{Y}$  on  $\boldsymbol{X}_1 \hat{\boldsymbol{C}}_{k,n}$  and a constant where  $\hat{\boldsymbol{C}}_{k,n} = [\hat{\boldsymbol{b}}_1, ..., \hat{\boldsymbol{b}}_k]$  to find  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\gamma}}_k$ .

Again let  $Y = \alpha + \boldsymbol{x}^T \boldsymbol{\beta}_{kPLS} + \epsilon$  be a working model. From Naik and Tsai (2000), Helland and Almøy (1994), and Helland (1990), let  $\hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n}^T = [\hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}Y}, \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}} \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}Y}, \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}}^2 \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}Y}, ..., \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}}^{k-1} \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}Y}]$ . Let  $\boldsymbol{w} = \hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n} \boldsymbol{x}$  with  $Y = \alpha + \boldsymbol{w}^T \boldsymbol{\gamma}_k + \epsilon$  the working model so  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{kPLS} = \hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n}^T \hat{\boldsymbol{\gamma}}_k$ . Then  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{kPLS} = \hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n}^T [\hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n} \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}} \hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n}^T]^{-1} \hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n} \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}Y} = \hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n}^T [\hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n} \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}} \hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n}^T]^{-1} \hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n} \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}} \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS}(\boldsymbol{x}, Y)$ .

The Mevik et al. (2015) pls library is useful for computing PLS and PCR.

## 3.5 Ridge Regression

Consider the MLR model  $\mathbf{Y} = \mathbf{X}\boldsymbol{\beta} + \boldsymbol{e}$ . Ridge regression uses the centered response  $Z_i = Y_i - \overline{Y}$  and standardized nontrivial predictors in the model  $\mathbf{Z} = \mathbf{W}\boldsymbol{\eta} + \boldsymbol{\epsilon}$ . Then  $\hat{Y}_i = \hat{Z}_i + \overline{Y}$ . Note that in Definition 3.7,  $\lambda_{1,n}$  is a tuning

#### 3.5 Ridge Regression

parameter, not an eigenvalue. The residuals  $\boldsymbol{r} = \boldsymbol{r}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_R) = \boldsymbol{Y} - \hat{\boldsymbol{Y}}$ . Refer to Definition 3.3 for the OLS estimator  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_{OLS} = (\boldsymbol{W}^T \boldsymbol{W})^{-1} \boldsymbol{W}^T \boldsymbol{Z}$ .

**Definition 3.6.** Consider the MLR model  $\mathbf{Z} = \mathbf{W}\boldsymbol{\eta} + \boldsymbol{\epsilon}$ . Let  $\boldsymbol{b}$  be a  $(p-1) \times 1$  vector. Then the fitted value  $\hat{Z}_i(\boldsymbol{b}) = \boldsymbol{w}_i^T \boldsymbol{b}$  and the residual  $r_i(\boldsymbol{b}) = Z_i - \hat{Z}_i(\boldsymbol{b})$ . The vector of fitted values  $\hat{\boldsymbol{Z}}(\boldsymbol{b}) = \mathbf{W}\boldsymbol{b}$  and the vector of residuals  $\boldsymbol{r}(\boldsymbol{b}) = \mathbf{Z} - \hat{\boldsymbol{Z}}(\boldsymbol{b})$ .

**Definition 3.7.** a) Consider fitting the MLR model  $Y = X\beta + e$  using  $Z = W\eta + \epsilon$ . Let  $\lambda \geq 0$  be a constant. The ridge regression estimator  $\hat{\eta}_R$  minimizes the ridge regression criterion

$$Q_R(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \frac{1}{a} (\boldsymbol{Z} - \boldsymbol{W}\boldsymbol{\eta})^T (\boldsymbol{Z} - \boldsymbol{W}\boldsymbol{\eta}) + \frac{\lambda_{1,n}}{a} \sum_{i=1}^{p-1} \eta_i^2$$
(3.13)

over all vectors  $\boldsymbol{\eta} \in \mathbb{R}^{p-1}$  where  $\lambda_{1,n} \geq 0$  and a > 0 are known constants with a = 1, 2, n, and 2n common. Then

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_R = (\boldsymbol{W}^T \boldsymbol{W} + \lambda_{1,n} \boldsymbol{I}_{p-1})^{-1} \boldsymbol{W}^T \boldsymbol{Z}.$$
(3.14)

The residual sum of squares  $RSS(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = (\boldsymbol{Z} - \boldsymbol{W}\boldsymbol{\eta})^T (\boldsymbol{Z} - \boldsymbol{W}\boldsymbol{\eta})$ , and  $\lambda_{1,n} = 0$  corresponds to the OLS estimator  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_{OLS}$ . The ridge regression vector of fitted values is  $\hat{\boldsymbol{Z}} = \hat{\boldsymbol{Z}}_R = \boldsymbol{W}\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_R$ , and the ridge regression vector of residuals  $\boldsymbol{r}_R = \boldsymbol{r}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_R) = \boldsymbol{Z} - \hat{\boldsymbol{Z}}_R$ . The estimator is said to be *regularized* if  $\lambda_{1,n} > 0$ . Obtain  $\hat{\boldsymbol{Y}}$  and  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_R$  using  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_R, \hat{\boldsymbol{Z}}$ , and  $\overline{\boldsymbol{Y}}$ .

b) Consider fitting the MLR model  $\mathbf{Y} = \mathbf{X}\boldsymbol{\beta} + \mathbf{e}$ . Let  $\lambda \geq 0$  be a constant. The ridge regression estimator  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{R}$  minimizes the ridge regression criterion

$$Q_R(\boldsymbol{\beta}) = \frac{1}{a} (\boldsymbol{Y} - \boldsymbol{X}\boldsymbol{\beta})^T (\boldsymbol{Y} - \boldsymbol{X}\boldsymbol{\beta}) + \frac{\lambda_{1,n}}{a} \sum_{i=2}^p \beta_i^2$$
(3.15)

over all vectors  $\boldsymbol{\beta} \in \mathbb{R}^p$  Then

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{R} = (\boldsymbol{X}^{T}\boldsymbol{X} + \lambda_{1,n}\boldsymbol{I}_{p})^{-1}\boldsymbol{X}^{T}\boldsymbol{Y}.$$
(3.16)

The residual sum of squares  $RSS(\boldsymbol{\beta}) = (\boldsymbol{Y} - \boldsymbol{X}\boldsymbol{\beta})^T (\boldsymbol{Y} - \boldsymbol{X}\boldsymbol{\beta})$ , and  $\lambda_{1,n} = 0$  corresponds to the OLS estimator  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS}$ . The ridge regression vector of fitted values is  $\hat{\boldsymbol{Y}} = \hat{\boldsymbol{Y}}_R = \boldsymbol{X}\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_R$ , and the ridge regression vector of residuals  $\boldsymbol{r}_R = \boldsymbol{r}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_R) = \boldsymbol{Y} - \hat{\boldsymbol{Y}}_R$ .

Using a vector of parameters  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$  and a dummy vector  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$  in  $Q_R$  is common for minimizing a criterion  $Q(\boldsymbol{\eta})$ , often with estimating equations. See the paragraphs above and below Definition 3.4. We could also write

$$Q_R(\boldsymbol{b}) = rac{1}{a} \boldsymbol{r}(\boldsymbol{b})^T \boldsymbol{r}(\boldsymbol{b}) + rac{\lambda_{1,n}}{a} \boldsymbol{b}^T \boldsymbol{b}$$

where the minimization is over all vectors  $\boldsymbol{b} \in \mathbb{R}^{p-1}$ . Note that  $\sum_{i=1}^{p-1} \eta_i^2 = \boldsymbol{\eta}^T \boldsymbol{\eta} = \|\boldsymbol{\eta}\|_2^2$ . The literature often uses  $\lambda_a = \lambda = \lambda_{1,n}/a$ .

Note that  $\lambda_{1,n} \boldsymbol{b}^T \boldsymbol{b} = \lambda_{1,n} \sum_{i=1}^{p-1} b_i^2$ . Each coefficient  $b_i$  is penalized equally by  $\lambda_{1,n}$ . Hence using standardized nontrivial predictors makes sense so that if  $\eta_i$  is large in magnitude, then the standardized variable  $w_i$  is important.

**Remark 3.13.** i) If  $\lambda_{1,n} = 0$ , the ridge regression estimator becomes the OLS full model estimator:  $\hat{\eta}_R = \hat{\eta}_{OLS}$ .

ii) If  $\lambda_{1,n} > 0$ , then  $\mathbf{W}^T \mathbf{W} + \lambda_{1,n} \mathbf{I}_{p-1}$  is nonsingular. Hence  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_R$  exists even if  $\boldsymbol{X}$  and  $\boldsymbol{W}$  are singular or ill conditioned, or if p > n.

iii) Following Hastie et al. (2009, p. 96), let the augmented matrix  $W_A$  and the augmented response vector  $Z_A$  be defined by

$$oldsymbol{W}_A = egin{pmatrix} oldsymbol{W}_A = egin{pmatrix} oldsymbol{W}_{\Lambda,n} & oldsymbol{I}_{p-1} \end{pmatrix}, ext{ and } oldsymbol{Z}_A = egin{pmatrix} oldsymbol{Z}_A \ oldsymbol{0} \end{pmatrix},$$

where **0** is the  $(p-1) \times 1$  zero vector. For  $\lambda_{1,n} > 0$ , the OLS estimator from regressing  $\mathbf{Z}_A$  on  $\mathbf{W}_A$  is

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_A = (\boldsymbol{W}_A^T \boldsymbol{W}_A)^{-1} \boldsymbol{W}_A^T \boldsymbol{Z}_A = \hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_R$$

since  $\boldsymbol{W}_{A}^{T}\boldsymbol{Z}_{A} = \boldsymbol{W}^{T}\boldsymbol{Z}$  and

$$\boldsymbol{W}_{A}^{T}\boldsymbol{W}_{A} = \begin{pmatrix} \boldsymbol{W}^{T} & \sqrt{\lambda_{1,n}} & \boldsymbol{I}_{p-1} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \boldsymbol{W} \\ \sqrt{\lambda_{1,n}} & \boldsymbol{I}_{p-1} \end{pmatrix} = \boldsymbol{W}^{T}\boldsymbol{W} + \lambda_{1,n} & \boldsymbol{I}_{p-1}.$$

iv) A simple way to regularize a regression estimator, such as the  $L_1$  estimator, is to compute that estimator from regressing  $Z_A$  on  $W_A$ .

Remark 3.13 iii) is interesting. Note that for  $\lambda_{1,n} > 0$ , the  $(n+p-1) \times (p-1)$ matrix  $\boldsymbol{W}_A$  has full rank p-1. The augmented OLS model consists of adding p-1 pseudo-cases  $(\boldsymbol{w}_{n+1}^T, Z_{n+1})^T, \dots, (\boldsymbol{w}_{n+p-1}^T, Z_{n+p-1})^T$  where  $Z_j = 0$  and  $\boldsymbol{w}_j = (0, \dots, \sqrt{\lambda_{1,n}}, 0, \dots, 0)^T$  for  $j = n+1, \dots, n+p-1$  where the nonzero entry is in the kth position if j = n + k. For centered response and standardized nontrivial predictors, the population OLS regression fit runs through the origin  $(\boldsymbol{w}^T, Z)^T = (\boldsymbol{0}^T, 0)^T$ . Hence for  $\lambda_{1,n} = 0$ , the augmented OLS model adds p-1 typical cases at the origin. If  $\lambda_{1,n}$  is not large, then the pseudodata can still be regarded as typical cases. If  $\lambda_{1,n}$  is large, the pseudo-data act as w-outliers (outliers in the standardized predictor variables), and the OLS slopes go to zero as  $\lambda_{1,n}$  gets large, making  $\hat{\boldsymbol{Z}} \approx \boldsymbol{0}$  so  $\hat{\boldsymbol{Y}} \approx \overline{\boldsymbol{Y}}$ .

To prove Remark 3.13 ii), let  $(\psi, \mathbf{g})$  be an eigenvalue eigenvector pair of  $\mathbf{W}^T \mathbf{W} = n\mathbf{R}_{\mathbf{u}}$ . Then  $[\mathbf{W}^T \mathbf{W} + \lambda_{1,n} \mathbf{I}_{p-1}]\mathbf{g} = (\psi + \lambda_{1,n})\mathbf{g}$ , and  $(\psi + \lambda_{1,n}, \mathbf{g})$  is an eigenvalue eigenvector pair of  $\mathbf{W}^T \mathbf{W} + \lambda_{1,n} \mathbf{I}_{p-1} > 0$  provided  $\lambda_{1,n} > 0$ .

#### 3.5 Ridge Regression

The degrees of freedom for a ridge regression with known  $\lambda_{1,n}$  is also interesting and will be found in the next paragraph. The sample correlation matrix of the nontrivial predictors

$$\boldsymbol{R}_{\boldsymbol{u}} = \frac{1}{n-g} \boldsymbol{W}_{g}^{T} \boldsymbol{W}_{g}$$

where we will use g = 0 and  $\mathbf{W} = \mathbf{W}_0$ . Then  $\mathbf{W}^T \mathbf{W} = n\mathbf{R}_{\mathbf{u}}$ . By singular value decomposition (SVD) theory, the SVD of  $\mathbf{W}$  is  $\mathbf{W} = \mathbf{U}\mathbf{\Lambda}\mathbf{V}^T$  where the positive singular values  $\sigma_i$  are square roots of the positive eigenvalues of both  $\mathbf{W}^T \mathbf{W}$  and of  $\mathbf{W}\mathbf{W}^T$ . Also  $\mathbf{V} = (\hat{\mathbf{e}}_1 \ \hat{\mathbf{e}}_2 \ \cdots \ \hat{\mathbf{e}}_p)$ , and  $\mathbf{W}^T \mathbf{W} \hat{\mathbf{e}}_i = \sigma_i^2 \hat{\mathbf{e}}_i$ . Hence  $\hat{\lambda}_i = \sigma_i^2$  where  $\hat{\lambda}_i = \hat{\lambda}_i(\mathbf{W}^T \mathbf{W})$  is the *i*th eigenvalue of  $\mathbf{W}^T \mathbf{W}$ , and  $\hat{\mathbf{e}}_i$ is the *i*th orthonormal eigenvector of  $\mathbf{R}_{\mathbf{u}}$  and of  $\mathbf{W}^T \mathbf{W}$ . The SVD of  $\mathbf{W}^T$  is  $\mathbf{W}^T = \mathbf{V}\mathbf{\Lambda}^T \mathbf{U}^T$ , and the *Gram matrix* 

$$oldsymbol{W}oldsymbol{W}^T = egin{bmatrix} oldsymbol{w}_1^Toldsymbol{w}_1\ oldsymbol{w}_1\ oldsymbol{w}_1\ oldsymbol{w}_1\ oldsymbol{w}_1\ oldsymbol{w}_n\ oldsymbol{w}_1\ oldsymbol{w}_n\ oldsymbol{w}_n\ oldsymbol{w}_1\ oldsymbol{w}_n\ oldsymbo$$

which is the matrix of scalar products. Warning: Note that  $\sigma_i$  is the *i*th singular value of W, not the standard deviation of  $w_i$ .

Following Hastie et al. (2009, p. 68), if  $\hat{\lambda}_i = \hat{\lambda}_i(\boldsymbol{W}^T \boldsymbol{W})$  is the *i*th eigenvalue of  $\boldsymbol{W}^T \boldsymbol{W}$  where  $\hat{\lambda}_1 \geq \hat{\lambda}_2 \geq \cdots \geq \hat{\lambda}_{p-1}$ , then the (effective) degrees of freedom for the ridge regression of  $\boldsymbol{Z}$  on  $\boldsymbol{W}$  with known  $\lambda_{1,n}$  is  $df(\lambda_{1,n}) =$ 

$$tr[\boldsymbol{W}(\boldsymbol{W}^{T}\boldsymbol{W} + \lambda_{1,n}\boldsymbol{I}_{p-1})^{-1}\boldsymbol{W}^{T}] = \sum_{i=1}^{p-1} \frac{\sigma_{i}^{2}}{\sigma_{i}^{2} + \lambda_{1,n}} = \sum_{i=1}^{p-1} \frac{\hat{\lambda}_{i}}{\hat{\lambda}_{i} + \lambda_{1,n}} \quad (3.17)$$

where the trace of a square  $(p-1) \times (p-1)$  matrix  $\mathbf{A} = (a_{ij})$  is  $tr(\mathbf{A}) = \sum_{i=1}^{p-1} a_{ii} = \sum_{i=1}^{p-1} \hat{\lambda}_i(\mathbf{A})$ . Note that the trace of  $\mathbf{A}$  is the sum of the diagonal elements of  $\mathbf{A}$  = the sum of the eigenvalues of  $\mathbf{A}$ .

Note that  $0 \leq df(\lambda_{1,n}) \leq p-1$  where  $df(\lambda_{1,n}) = p-1$  if  $\lambda_{1,n} = 0$  and  $df(\lambda_{1,n}) \to 0$  as  $\lambda_{1,n} \to \infty$ . The *R* code below illustrates how to compute ridge regression degrees of freedom.

```
[2,] -0.04826094 1.00000000 -0.12426268
[3,] -0.06726636 -0.12426268 1.0000000
cor(u) #same as above
rs <- t(w) %*%w #scaled correlation matrix n R
svs <-svd(w)$d #singular values of w</pre>
lambda <- 0
d <- sum(svs<sup>2</sup>/(svs<sup>2</sup>+lambda))
#effective df for ridge regression using w
d
[1] 3 #= q = p-1
112.60792 103.88089 83.51119
svs<sup>2</sup> #as above
uu<-scale(u,scale=F) #centered but not scaled
svs <-svd(uu)$d #singular values of uu
svs^2
[1] 135.78205 108.85903 85.83395
d <- sum(svs^2/(svs^2+lambda))</pre>
#effective df for ridge regression using uu
#d is again 3 if lambda = 0
```

In general, if  $\hat{Z} = H_{\lambda}Z$ , then  $df(\hat{Z}) = tr(H_{\lambda})$  where  $H_{\lambda}$  is a  $(p-1) \times (p-1)$  "hat matrix." For computing  $\hat{Y}$ ,  $df(\hat{Y}) = df(\hat{Z}) + 1$  since a constant  $\hat{\beta}_1$  also needs to be estimated. These formulas for degrees of freedom assume that  $\lambda$  is known before fitting the model. The formulas do not give the model degrees of freedom if  $\hat{\lambda}$  is selected from M values  $\lambda_1, ..., \lambda_M$  using a criterion such as k-fold cross validation.

Suppose the ridge regression criterion is written, using a = 2n, as

$$Q_{R,n}(\boldsymbol{b}) = \frac{1}{2n} \boldsymbol{r}(\boldsymbol{b})^T \boldsymbol{r}(\boldsymbol{b}) + \lambda_{2n} \boldsymbol{b}^T \boldsymbol{b}, \qquad (3.18)$$

as in Hastie et al. (2015, p. 10). Then  $\lambda_{2n} = \lambda_{1,n}/(2n)$  using the  $\lambda_{1,n}$  from (3.9).

The following remark is interesting if  $\lambda_{1,n}$  and p are fixed. However,  $\hat{\lambda}_{1,n}$  is usually used, for example, after 10-fold cross validation. The fact that  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_R = \boldsymbol{A}_{n,\lambda} \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS}$  appears in Efron and Hastie (2016, p. 98), and Marquardt and Snee (1975). See Theorem 3.7 for the ridge regression central limit theorem.

**Remark 3.13.** Ridge regression has a simple relationship with OLS if n > p and  $(\mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X})^{-1}$  exists. Then  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_R = (\mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X} + \lambda_{1,n} \mathbf{I}_p)^{-1} \mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{Y} = (\mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X} + \lambda_{1,n} \mathbf{I}_p)^{-1} (\mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X}) (\mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X})^{-1} \mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{Y} = \mathbf{A}_{n,\lambda} \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS}$  where  $\mathbf{A}_{n,\lambda} \equiv \mathbf{A}_n = (\mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X} + \lambda_{1,n} \mathbf{I}_p)^{-1} \mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X}$ . By the OLS CLT Equation (3.3) with  $\hat{\mathbf{V}}/n = (\mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X})^{-1}$ , a normal approximation for OLS is

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS} \sim AN_p(\boldsymbol{\beta}, MSE \; (\boldsymbol{X}^T \boldsymbol{X})^{-1}).$$

#### 3.5 Ridge Regression

Hence a normal approximation for ridge regression is

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{R} \sim AN_{p}(\boldsymbol{A}_{n}\boldsymbol{\beta}, MSE \ \boldsymbol{A}_{n}(\boldsymbol{X}^{T}\boldsymbol{X})^{-1}\boldsymbol{A}_{n}^{T}) \sim$$
$$AN_{p}[\boldsymbol{A}_{n}\boldsymbol{\beta}, MSE \ (\boldsymbol{X}^{T}\boldsymbol{X} + \lambda_{1,n}\boldsymbol{I}_{p})^{-1}(\boldsymbol{X}^{T}\boldsymbol{X})(\boldsymbol{X}^{T}\boldsymbol{X} + \lambda_{1,n}\boldsymbol{I}_{p})^{-1}].$$

If Equation (3.3) holds and  $\lambda_{1,n}/n \to 0$  as  $n \to \infty$ , then  $A_n \xrightarrow{P} I_p$ .

**Remark 3.14.** The ridge regression criterion from Definition 3.7 can also be defined by

$$Q_R(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \|\boldsymbol{Z} - \boldsymbol{W}\boldsymbol{\eta}\|_2^2 + \lambda_{1,n}\boldsymbol{\eta}^T\boldsymbol{\eta}.$$
 (3.19)

Then by Theorem 3.4, the gradient  $\nabla Q_R = -2 \mathbf{W}^T \mathbf{Z} + 2(\mathbf{W}^T \mathbf{W}) \boldsymbol{\eta} + 2\lambda_{1,n} \boldsymbol{\eta}$ . Cancelling constants and evaluating the gradient at  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_R$  gives the score equations

$$-\boldsymbol{W}^{T}(\boldsymbol{Z}-\boldsymbol{W}\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_{R})+\lambda_{1,n}\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_{R}=\boldsymbol{0}.$$
(3.20)

Following Hastie and Efron (2016, pp. 381-382, 392), this means  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_R = \boldsymbol{W}^T \boldsymbol{a}$  for some  $n \times 1$  vector  $\boldsymbol{a}$ . Hence  $-\boldsymbol{W}^T (\boldsymbol{Z} - \boldsymbol{W} \boldsymbol{W}^T \boldsymbol{a}) + \lambda_{1,n} \boldsymbol{W}^T \boldsymbol{a} = \boldsymbol{0}$ , or

$$\boldsymbol{W}^{T}(\boldsymbol{W}\boldsymbol{W}^{T}+\lambda_{1,n}\boldsymbol{I}_{n})]\boldsymbol{a}=\boldsymbol{W}^{T}\boldsymbol{Z}$$

which has solution  $\boldsymbol{a} = (\boldsymbol{W}\boldsymbol{W}^T + \lambda_{1,n}\boldsymbol{I}_n)^{-1}\boldsymbol{Z}$ . Hence

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_R = \boldsymbol{W}^T \boldsymbol{a} = \boldsymbol{W}^T (\boldsymbol{W} \boldsymbol{W}^T + \lambda_{1,n} \boldsymbol{I}_n)^{-1} \boldsymbol{Z} = (\boldsymbol{W}^T \boldsymbol{W} + \lambda_{1,n} \boldsymbol{I}_{p-1})^{-1} \boldsymbol{W}^T \boldsymbol{Z}.$$

Using the  $n \times n$  matrix  $\boldsymbol{W}\boldsymbol{W}^T$  is computationally efficient if p > n while using the  $p \times p$  matrix  $\boldsymbol{W}^T \boldsymbol{W}$  is computationally efficient if n > p. If  $\boldsymbol{A}$  is  $k \times k$ , then computing  $\boldsymbol{A}^{-1}$  has  $O(k^3)$  complexity.

The following identity from Gunst and Mason (1980, p. 342) is useful for ridge regression inference:  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_R = (\boldsymbol{X}^T \boldsymbol{X} + \lambda_{1,n} \boldsymbol{I}_p)^{-1} \boldsymbol{X}^T \boldsymbol{Y}$ 

$$= (\mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X} + \lambda_{1,n} \mathbf{I}_p)^{-1} \mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X} (\mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X})^{-1} \mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{Y}$$
$$= (\mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X} + \lambda_{1,n} \mathbf{I}_p)^{-1} \mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X} \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS} = \mathbf{A}_n \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS} =$$
$$[\mathbf{I}_p - \lambda_{1,n} (\mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X} + \lambda_{1,n} \mathbf{I}_p)^{-1}] \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS} = \mathbf{B}_n \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS} =$$
$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS} - \frac{\lambda_{1n}}{n} n (\mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X} + \lambda_{1,n} \mathbf{I}_p)^{-1} \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS}$$

since  $A_n - B_n = 0$ , where  $A_n = (X^T X + \lambda_{1,n} I_p)^{-1} (X^T X) = B_n$ =  $I_p - \lambda_{1,n} (X^T X + \lambda_{1,n} I_p)^{-1}$ . See Problem 3.3. Assume

$$\frac{\boldsymbol{X}^T\boldsymbol{X}}{n} \to \boldsymbol{V}^{-1}$$

as  $n \to \infty$ . If  $\lambda_{1,n}/n \to 0$  then

$$\frac{\boldsymbol{X}^T \boldsymbol{X} + \lambda_{1,n} \boldsymbol{I}_p}{n} \xrightarrow{P} \boldsymbol{V}^{-1}, \text{ and } n(\boldsymbol{X}^T \boldsymbol{X} + \lambda_{1,n} \boldsymbol{I}_p)^{-1} \xrightarrow{P} \boldsymbol{V}$$

Note that

$$\boldsymbol{A}_n = \boldsymbol{A}_{n,\lambda} = \left(\frac{\boldsymbol{X}^T \boldsymbol{X} + \lambda_{1,n} \boldsymbol{I}_p}{n}\right)^{-1} \frac{\boldsymbol{X}^T \boldsymbol{X}}{n} \xrightarrow{P} \boldsymbol{V} \boldsymbol{V}^{-1} = \boldsymbol{I}_p$$

if  $\lambda_{1,n}/n \to 0$  since matrix inversion is a continuous function of a positive definite matrix. See, for example, Bhatia et al. (1990), Stewart (1969), and Severini (2005, pp. 348-349).

For model selection, the M values of  $\lambda = \lambda_{1,n}$  are denoted by  $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, ..., \lambda_M$ where  $\lambda_i = \lambda_{1,n,i}$  depends on n for i = 1, ..., M. If  $\lambda_s$  corresponds to the model selected, then  $\hat{\lambda}_{1,n} = \lambda_s$ . The following theorem shows that ridge regression and the OLS full model are asymptotically equivalent if  $\hat{\lambda}_{1,n} = o_P(n^{1/2})$  so  $\hat{\lambda}_{1,n}/\sqrt{n} \xrightarrow{P} 0$ .

Theorem 3.7, RR CLT (Ridge Regression Central Limit Theorem. Assume p is fixed and that the conditions of the OLS CLT Theorem Equation (3.3) hold for the model  $\mathbf{Y} = \mathbf{X}\boldsymbol{\beta} + \boldsymbol{e}$ .

a) If  $\hat{\lambda}_{1,n}/\sqrt{n} \xrightarrow{P} 0$ , then

$$\sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_R - \boldsymbol{\beta}) \xrightarrow{D} N_p(\boldsymbol{0}, \sigma^2 \boldsymbol{V}).$$

b) If  $\hat{\lambda}_{1,n}/\sqrt{n} \xrightarrow{P} \tau \ge 0$  then

$$\sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_R - \boldsymbol{\beta}) \xrightarrow{D} N_p(-\tau \boldsymbol{V} \boldsymbol{\eta}, \sigma^2 \boldsymbol{V}).$$

**Proof:** If  $\hat{\lambda}_{1,n}/\sqrt{n} \xrightarrow{P} \tau \ge 0$ , then by the above Gunst and Mason (1980) identity,

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{R} = [\boldsymbol{I}_{p} - \hat{\lambda}_{1,n}(\boldsymbol{X}^{T}\boldsymbol{X} + \hat{\lambda}_{1,n}\boldsymbol{I}_{p})^{-1}]\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS}.$$

Hence

$$\begin{split} &\sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{R}-\boldsymbol{\beta}) = \sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{R}-\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS}+\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS}-\boldsymbol{\beta}) = \\ &\sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS}-\boldsymbol{\beta}) - \sqrt{n}\frac{\hat{\lambda}_{1,n}}{n}n(\boldsymbol{X}^{T}\boldsymbol{X}+\hat{\lambda}_{1,n}\boldsymbol{I}_{p})^{-1}\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS} \\ & \xrightarrow{D} N_{p}(\boldsymbol{0},\sigma^{2}\boldsymbol{V}) - \tau\boldsymbol{V}\boldsymbol{\beta} \sim N_{p}(-\tau\boldsymbol{V}\boldsymbol{\beta},\sigma^{2}\boldsymbol{V}). \quad \Box \end{split}$$

For p fixed, Knight and Fu (2000) note i) that  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_R$  is a consistent estimator of  $\boldsymbol{\beta}$  if  $\lambda_{1,n} = o(n)$  so  $\lambda_{1,n}/n \to 0$  as  $n \to \infty$ , ii) OLS and ridge regression are asymptotically equivalent if  $\lambda_{1,n}/\sqrt{n} \to 0$  as  $n \to \infty$ , iii) ridge regression is a  $\sqrt{n}$  consistent estimator of  $\boldsymbol{\beta}$  if  $\lambda_{1,n} = O(\sqrt{n})$  (so  $\lambda_{1,n}/\sqrt{n}$  is bounded), and iv) if  $\lambda_{1,n}/\sqrt{n} \to \tau \ge 0$ , then

#### 3.5 Ridge Regression

$$\sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_R - \boldsymbol{\beta}) \xrightarrow{D} N_p(-\tau \boldsymbol{V}\boldsymbol{\beta}, \sigma^2 \boldsymbol{V}).$$

Hence the bias can be considerable if  $\tau \neq 0$ . If  $\tau = 0$ , then OLS and ridge regression have the same limiting distribution.

Even if p is fixed, there are several problems with ridge regression inference if  $\hat{\lambda}_{1,n}$  is selected, e.g. after 10-fold cross validation. For OLS forward selection, the probability that the model  $I_{min}$  underfits goes to zero, and each model with  $S \subseteq I$  produced a  $\sqrt{n}$  consistent estimator  $\hat{\beta}_{I,0}$  of  $\beta$ . Ridge regression with 10-fold CV often shrinks  $\hat{\beta}_R$  too much if both i) the number of population active predictors  $k_S = a_S - 1$  in Equation (2.1) and Remark 3.5 is greater than about 20, and ii) the predictors are highly correlated. If p is fixed and  $\lambda_{1,n} = o_P(\sqrt{n})$ , then the OLS full model and ridge regression are asymptotically equivalent, but much larger sample sizes may be needed for the normal approximation to be good for ridge regression since the ridge regression estimator can have large bias for moderate n. Ten fold CV does not appear to guarantee that  $\hat{\lambda}_{1,n}/\sqrt{n} \xrightarrow{P} 0$  or  $\hat{\lambda}_{1,n}/n \xrightarrow{P} 0$ .

Ridge regression can be a lot better than the OLS full model if i)  $\mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X}$  is singular or ill conditioned or ii) n/p is small. Ridge regression can be much faster than forward selection if M = 100 and n and p are large.

Roughly speaking, the biased estimation of the ridge regression estimator can make the MSE of  $\hat{\beta}_R$  or  $\hat{\eta}_R$  less than that of  $\hat{\beta}_{OLS}$  or  $\hat{\eta}_{OLS}$ , but the large sample inference may need larger *n* for ridge regression than for OLS. However, the large sample theory has  $n \gg p$ . We will try to use prediction intervals to compare OLS, forward selection, ridge regression, and lasso for data sets where p > n. See Sections 3.9, 3.10, 3.11, and 3.13.

**Warning.** Although the *R* functions glmnet and cv.glmnet appear to do ridge regression, getting the fitted values,  $\hat{\lambda}_{1,n}$ , and degrees of freedom to match up with the formulas of this section can be difficult.

**Example 3.2**, continued. The ridge regression output below shows results for the marry data where 10-fold CV was used. A grid of 100  $\lambda$  values was used, and  $\lambda_0 > 0$  was selected. A problem with getting the false degrees of freedom *d* for ridge regression is that it is not clear that  $\lambda = \lambda_{1,n}/(2n)$ . We need to know the relationship between  $\lambda$  and  $\lambda_{1,n}$  in order to compute *d*. It seems unlikely that  $d \approx 1$  if  $\lambda_0$  is selected.

```
library(glmnet); y <- marry[,3]; x <- marry[,-3]
out<-cv.glmnet(x,y,alpha=0)
lam <- out$lambda.min #value of lambda that minimizes
#the 10-fold CV criterion
yhat <- predict(out,s=lam,newx=x)
res <- y - yhat
n <- length(y)
w1 <- scale(x)
w <- sqrt(n/(n-1))*w1 #t(w) %*% w = n R_u, u = x</pre>
```

```
diaq(t(w) % * % w)
           mmen mmilmen milwmn
    рор
     26
             26
                      26
                               26
\#sum w_i^2 = n = 26 \text{ for } i = 1, 2, 3, and 4
svs <- svd(w)$d #singular values of w,</pre>
pp <- 1 + sum(svs^2/(svs^2+2*n*lam)) #approx 1</pre>
# d for ridge regression if lam = lam_{1,n}/(2n)
AERplot2(yhat, y, res=res, d=pp)
$respi #90% PI for a future residual
[1] -5482.316 14854.268 #length = 20336.584
#try to reproduce the fitted values
z < -y - mean(y)
q<-dim(w)[2]
I <- diag(q)
M<- w%*%solve(t(w)%*%w + lam*I/(2*n))%*%t(w)
fit <-M%*%z + mean(y)
plot(fit, yhat) #they are not the same
max(abs(fit-yhat))
[1] 46789.11
M<- w%*%solve(t(w)%*%w + lam*I/(1547.1741))%*%t(w)
fit <- M%*%z + mean(y)</pre>
max(abs(fit-yhat)) #close
[1] 8.484979
```

# 3.6 Lasso

Consider the MLR model  $\mathbf{Y} = \mathbf{X}\boldsymbol{\beta} + \mathbf{e}$ . Lasso uses the centered response  $Z_i = Y_i - \overline{Y}$  and standardized nontrivial predictors in the model  $\mathbf{Z} = \mathbf{W}\boldsymbol{\eta} + \boldsymbol{\epsilon}$  as described in Remark 3.3. Then  $\hat{Y}_i = \hat{Z}_i + \overline{Y}$ . The residuals  $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_L) = \mathbf{Y} - \hat{\mathbf{Y}}$ . Recall that  $\overline{\mathbf{Y}} = \overline{Y}\mathbf{1}$ .

**Definition 3.8.** a) Consider fitting the MLR model  $Y = X\beta + e$  using  $Z = W\eta + \epsilon$ . The lasso estimator  $\hat{\eta}_L$  minimizes the lasso criterion

$$Q_L(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \frac{1}{a} (\boldsymbol{Z} - \boldsymbol{W}\boldsymbol{\eta})^T (\boldsymbol{Z} - \boldsymbol{W}\boldsymbol{\eta}) + \frac{\lambda_{1,n}}{a} \sum_{i=1}^{p-1} |\eta_i|$$
(3.21)

over all vectors  $\boldsymbol{\eta} \in \mathbb{R}^{p-1}$  where  $\lambda_{1,n} \geq 0$  and a > 0 are known constants with a = 1, 2, n, and 2n are common. The residual sum of squares  $RSS(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = (\boldsymbol{Z} - \boldsymbol{W}\boldsymbol{\eta})^T (\boldsymbol{Z} - \boldsymbol{W}\boldsymbol{\eta})$ , and  $\lambda_{1,n} = 0$  corresponds to the OLS estimator  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_{OLS} = (\boldsymbol{W}^T \boldsymbol{W})^{-1} \boldsymbol{W}^T \boldsymbol{Z}$  if  $\boldsymbol{W}$  has full rank p-1. The lasso vector of fitted values is  $\hat{\boldsymbol{Z}} = \hat{\boldsymbol{Z}}_L = \boldsymbol{W}\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_L$ , and the lasso vector of residuals  $\boldsymbol{r}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_L) = \boldsymbol{Z} - \hat{\boldsymbol{Z}}_L$ .

#### 3.6 Lasso

The estimator is said to be *regularized* if  $\lambda_{1,n} > 0$ . Obtain  $\hat{Y}$  and  $\hat{\beta}_L$  using  $\hat{\eta}_L$ ,  $\hat{Z}$ , and  $\overline{Y}$ .

b) The lasso estimator  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_L$  minimizes the lasso criterion

$$Q_L(\boldsymbol{\beta}) = \frac{1}{a} (\boldsymbol{Y} - \boldsymbol{X}\boldsymbol{\beta})^T (\boldsymbol{Y} - \boldsymbol{X}\boldsymbol{\beta}) + \frac{\lambda_{1,n}}{a} \sum_{i=2}^p |\beta_i|$$
(3.22)

over all vectors  $\boldsymbol{\beta} \in \mathbb{R}^p$ . The residual sum of squares  $RSS(\boldsymbol{\beta}) = (\boldsymbol{Y} - \boldsymbol{X}\boldsymbol{\beta})^T(\boldsymbol{Y} - \boldsymbol{X}\boldsymbol{\beta})$ , and  $\lambda_{1,n} = 0$  corresponds to the OLS estimator  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS} = (\boldsymbol{X}^T\boldsymbol{X})^{-1}\boldsymbol{X}^T\boldsymbol{Y}$  if  $\boldsymbol{X}$  has full rank p. The lasso vector of fitted values is  $\hat{\boldsymbol{Y}} = \hat{\boldsymbol{Y}}_L = \boldsymbol{X}\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_L$ , and the lasso vector of residuals  $\boldsymbol{r}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_L) = \boldsymbol{Y} - \hat{\boldsymbol{Y}}_L$ .

Using a vector of parameters  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$  and a dummy vector  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$  in  $Q_L$  is common for minimizing a criterion  $Q(\boldsymbol{\eta})$ , often with estimating equations. See the paragraphs above and below Definition 3.4. We could also write

$$Q_L(\boldsymbol{b}) = \frac{1}{a} \boldsymbol{r}(\boldsymbol{b})^T \boldsymbol{r}(\boldsymbol{b}) + \frac{\lambda_{1,n}}{a} \sum_{j=1}^{p-1} |b_j|, \qquad (3.23)$$

where the minimization is over all vectors  $\boldsymbol{b} \in \mathbb{R}^{p-1}$ . The literature often uses  $\lambda_a = \lambda = \lambda_{1,n}/a$ .

For fixed  $\lambda_{1,n}$ , the lasso optimization problem is convex. Hence fast algorithms exist. As  $\lambda_{1,n}$  increases, some of the  $\hat{\eta}_i = 0$ . If  $\lambda_{1,n}$  is large enough, then  $\hat{\eta}_L = \mathbf{0}$  and  $\hat{Y}_i = \overline{Y}$  for i = 1, ..., n. If none of the elements  $\hat{\eta}_i$  of  $\hat{\eta}_L$  are zero, then  $\hat{\eta}_L$  can be found, in principle, by setting the partial derivatives of  $Q_L(\boldsymbol{\eta})$  to 0. Potential minimizers also occur at values of  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$  where not all of the partial derivatives exist. An analogy is finding the minimizer of a real valued function of one variable h(x). Possible values for the minimizer include values of  $x_c$  satisfying  $h'(x_c) = 0$ , and values  $x_c$  where the derivative does not exist. Typically some of the elements  $\hat{\eta}_i$  of  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_L$  that minimizers  $Q_L(\boldsymbol{\eta})$  are zero, and differentiating does not work.

The following identity from Efron and Hastie (2016, p. 308), for example, is useful for inference for the lasso estimator  $\hat{\eta}_L$ :

$$\frac{-1}{n}\boldsymbol{X}^{T}(\boldsymbol{Y}-\boldsymbol{X}\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{L})+\frac{\lambda_{1,n}}{2n}\boldsymbol{s}_{n}=\boldsymbol{0} \text{ or } -\boldsymbol{X}^{T}(\boldsymbol{Y}-\boldsymbol{X}\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{L})+\frac{\lambda_{1,n}}{2}\boldsymbol{s}_{n}=\boldsymbol{0}$$

where  $s_{in} \in [-1, 1]$  and  $s_{in} = \operatorname{sign}(\hat{\beta}_{i,L})$  if  $\hat{\beta}_{i,L} \neq 0$ . Here  $\operatorname{sign}(\beta_i) = 1$  if  $\beta_i > 0$  and  $\operatorname{sign}(\beta_i) = -1$  if  $\beta_i < 0$ . Note that  $s_n = s_{n,\hat{\beta}_L}$  depends on  $\hat{\beta}_L$ . Thus  $\hat{\beta}_L$ 

$$= (\boldsymbol{X}^T \boldsymbol{X})^{-1} \boldsymbol{X}^T \boldsymbol{Y} - \frac{\lambda_{1,n}}{2n} n (\boldsymbol{X}^T \boldsymbol{X})^{-1} \boldsymbol{s}_n = \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS} - \frac{\lambda_{1,n}}{2n} n (\boldsymbol{X}^T \boldsymbol{X})^{-1} \boldsymbol{s}_n.$$

If none of the elements of  $\beta$  are zero, and if  $\dot{\beta}_L$  is a consistent estimator of  $\beta$ , then  $s_n \xrightarrow{P} s = s_{\mathcal{A}}$ . If  $\lambda_{1,n}/\sqrt{n} \to 0$ , then OLS and lasso are asymptotically equivalent even if  $s_n$  does not converge to a vector s as  $n \to \infty$  since  $s_n$  is bounded. For model selection, the M values of  $\lambda$  are denoted by  $0 \le \lambda_1 <$  $\lambda_2 < \cdots < \lambda_M$  where  $\lambda_i = \lambda_{1,n,i}$  depends on n for  $i = 1, \dots, M$ . Also,  $\lambda_M$ is the smallest value of  $\lambda$  such that  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{\lambda_M} = \mathbf{0}$ . Hence  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{\lambda_i} \neq \mathbf{0}$  for i < M. If  $\lambda_s$  corresponds to the model selected, then  $\hat{\lambda}_{1,n} = \lambda_s$ . The following theorem shows that lasso and the OLS full model are asymptotically equivalent if  $\hat{\lambda}_{1,n} = o_P(n^{1/2})$  so  $\hat{\lambda}_{1,n}/\sqrt{n} \xrightarrow{P} 0$ : thus  $\sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_L - \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS}) = o_P(1)$ .

**Theorem 3.8, Lasso CLT.** Assume p is fixed and that the conditions of the OLS CLT Theorem Equation (3.3) hold for the model  $Y = X\beta + e$ . a) If  $\hat{\lambda}_{1,n}/\sqrt{n} \xrightarrow{P} 0$  the

) If 
$$\lambda_{1,n}/\sqrt{n} \to 0$$
, then

$$\sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_L - \boldsymbol{\beta}) \xrightarrow{D} N_p(\boldsymbol{0}, \sigma^2 \boldsymbol{V}).$$

b) If  $\hat{\lambda}_{1,n}/\sqrt{n} \xrightarrow{P} \tau \geq 0$  and  $\boldsymbol{s}_n \xrightarrow{P} \boldsymbol{s} = \boldsymbol{s}_n$ , then

$$\sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_L - \boldsymbol{\beta}) \xrightarrow{D} N_p\left(\frac{-\tau}{2} \boldsymbol{V} \boldsymbol{s}, \sigma^2 \boldsymbol{V}\right)$$

**Proof.** If  $\hat{\lambda}_{1,n}/\sqrt{n} \xrightarrow{P} \tau \geq 0$  and  $\boldsymbol{s}_n \xrightarrow{P} \boldsymbol{s} = \boldsymbol{s}_{\boldsymbol{\eta}}$ , then

$$\begin{split} \sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{L} - \boldsymbol{\beta}) &= \sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{L} - \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS} + \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS} - \boldsymbol{\beta}) = \\ \sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS} - \boldsymbol{\beta}) - \sqrt{n}\frac{\lambda_{1,n}}{2n}n(\boldsymbol{X}^{T}\boldsymbol{X})^{-1}\boldsymbol{s}_{n} \xrightarrow{D} N_{p}(\boldsymbol{0}, \sigma^{2}\boldsymbol{V}) - \frac{\tau}{2}\boldsymbol{V}\boldsymbol{s} \\ &\sim N_{p}\left(\frac{-\tau}{2}\boldsymbol{V}\boldsymbol{s}, \sigma^{2}\boldsymbol{V}\right) \end{split}$$

since under the OLS CLT,  $n(\boldsymbol{X}^T\boldsymbol{X})^{-1} \xrightarrow{P} \boldsymbol{V}$ .

Part a) does not need  $s_n \xrightarrow{P} s$  as  $n \to \infty$ , since  $s_n$  is bounded.  $\Box$ 

Suppose p is fixed. Knight and Fu (2000) note i) that  $\hat{\beta}_L$  is a consistent estimator of  $\eta$  if  $\lambda_{1,n} = o(n)$  so  $\lambda_{1,n}/n \to 0$  as  $n \to \infty$ , ii) OLS and lasso are asymptotically equivalent if  $\lambda_{1,n} \to \infty$  too slowly as  $n \to \infty$  (e.g. if  $\lambda_{1,n} = \lambda$ is fixed), iii) lasso is a  $\sqrt{n}$  consistent estimator of  $\beta$  if  $\lambda_{1,n} = O(\sqrt{n})$  (so  $\lambda_{1,n}/\sqrt{n}$  is bounded). Note that Theorem 3.8 shows that OLS and lasso are asymptotically equivalent if  $\lambda_{1,n}/\sqrt{n} \to 0$  as  $n \to 0$ .

In the literature, the criterion often uses  $\lambda_a = \lambda_{1,n}/a$ :

3.6 **Lasso** 

$$Q_{L,a}(\boldsymbol{b}) = rac{1}{a} \boldsymbol{r}(\boldsymbol{b})^T \boldsymbol{r}(\boldsymbol{b}) + \lambda_a \sum_{j=1}^{p-1} |b_j|.$$

The values a = 1, 2, and 2n are common. Following Hastie et al. (2015, pp. 9, 17, 19) for the next two paragraphs, it is convenient to use a = 2n:

$$Q_{L,2n}(\boldsymbol{b}) = \frac{1}{2n} \boldsymbol{r}(\boldsymbol{b})^T \boldsymbol{r}(\boldsymbol{b}) + \lambda_{2n} \sum_{j=1}^{p-1} |b_j|, \qquad (3.24)$$

where the  $Z_i$  are centered and the  $w_j$  are standardized using g = 0 so  $\overline{w}_j = 0$ and  $n\hat{\sigma}_j^2 = \sum_{i=1}^n w_{i,j}^2 = n$ . Then  $\lambda = \lambda_{2n} = \lambda_{1,n}/(2n)$  in Equation (3.21). For model selection, the M values of  $\lambda$  are denoted by  $0 \leq \lambda_{2n,1} < \lambda_{2n,2} < \cdots < \lambda_{2n,M}$  where  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_{\lambda} = \boldsymbol{0}$  iff  $\lambda \geq \lambda_{2n,M}$  and

$$\lambda_{2n,max} = \lambda_{2n,M} = \max_{j} \left| \frac{1}{n} \boldsymbol{s}_{j}^{T} \boldsymbol{Z} \right|$$

and  $s_j$  is the *j*th column of W corresponding to the *j*th standardized nontrivial predictor  $W_j$ . In terms of the  $0 \leq \lambda_1 < \lambda_2 < \cdots < \lambda_M$ , used above Theorem 3.8, we have  $\lambda_i = \lambda_{1,n,i} = 2n\lambda_{2n,i}$  and

$$\lambda_M = 2n\lambda_{2n,M} = 2\max_j \left| \boldsymbol{s}_j^T \boldsymbol{Z} \right|.$$

For model selection we let I denote the index set of the predictors in the fitted model including the constant. The set A defined below is the index set without the constant.

**Definition 3.9.** The *active set* A is the index set of the nontrivial predictors in the fitted model: the predictors with nonzero  $\hat{\eta}_i$ .

Suppose that there are k active nontrivial predictors. Then for lasso,  $k \leq n$ . Let the  $n \times k$  matrix  $\boldsymbol{W}_A$  correspond to the standardized active predictors. If the columns of  $\boldsymbol{W}_A$  are in general position, then the lasso vector of fitted values

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{Z}}_L = \boldsymbol{W}_A (\boldsymbol{W}_A^T \boldsymbol{W}_A)^{-1} \boldsymbol{W}_A^T \boldsymbol{Z} - n\lambda_{2n} \boldsymbol{W}_A (\boldsymbol{W}_A^T \boldsymbol{W}_A)^{-1} \boldsymbol{s}_A$$

where  $s_A$  is the vector of signs of the active lasso coefficients. Here we are using the  $\lambda_{2n}$  of (3.24), and  $n\lambda_{2n} = \lambda_{1,n}/2$ . We could replace  $n \lambda_{2n}$  by  $\lambda_2$  if we used a = 2 in the criterion

$$Q_{L,2}(\boldsymbol{b}) = \frac{1}{2} \boldsymbol{r}(\boldsymbol{b})^T \boldsymbol{r}(\boldsymbol{b}) + \lambda_2 \sum_{j=1}^{p-1} |b_j|.$$
(3.25)

See, for example, Tibshirani (2015). Note that  $\boldsymbol{W}_A(\boldsymbol{W}_A^T\boldsymbol{W}_A)^{-1}\boldsymbol{W}_A^T\boldsymbol{Z}$  is the vector of OLS fitted values from regressing  $\boldsymbol{Z}$  on  $\boldsymbol{W}_A$  without an intercept.

**Example 3.2**, continued. The lasso output below shows results for the marry data where 10-fold CV was used. A grid of 38  $\lambda$  values was used, and  $\lambda_0 > 0$  was selected.

```
library(glmnet); y <- marry[,3]; x <- marry[,-3]
out<-cv.glmnet(x,y)
lam <- out$lambda.min #value of lambda that minimizes
#the 10-fold CV criterion
yhat <- predict(out,s=lam,newx=x)
res <- y - yhat
pp <- out$nzero[out$lambda==lam] + 1 #d for lasso
AERplot2(yhat,y,res=res,d=pp)
$respi #90% PI for a future residual
-4102.672 4379.951 #length = 8482.62
```

There are some problems with lasso. i) Lasso large sample theory is worse or as good as that of the OLS full model if n/p is large. ii) Ten fold CV does not appear to guarantee that  $\hat{\lambda}_{1,n}/\sqrt{n} \stackrel{P}{\to} 0$  or  $\hat{\lambda}_{1,n}/n \stackrel{P}{\to} 0$ . iii) Lasso often shrinks  $\hat{\beta}$  too much if  $a_S \geq 20$  and the predictors are highly correlated. iv) Ridge regression can be better than lasso if  $a_S > n$ .

Lasso can be a lot better than the OLS full model if i)  $\mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X}$  is singular or ill conditioned or ii) n/p is small. iii) For lasso, M = M(lasso) is often near 100. Let  $J \ge 5$ . If n/J and p are both a lot larger than M(lasso), then lasso can be considerably faster than forward selection, PLS, and PCR if M = M(lasso) = 100 and  $M = M(F) = \min(\lceil n/J \rceil, p)$  where F stands for forward selection, PLS, or PCR. iv) The number of nonzero coefficients in  $\hat{\eta}_L \le n$  even if p > n. This property of lasso can be useful if p >> n and the population model is sparse.

# 3.7 Lasso Variable Selection

Lasso variable selection applies OLS on a constant and the active predictors that have nonzero lasso  $\hat{\eta}_i$  (model  $I = I_{min}$ ). Lasso variable selection is called relaxed lasso by Hastie et al. (2015, p. 12), and the relaxed lasso estimator with  $\phi = 0$  by Meinshausen (2007). The method is also called OLS-post lasso and post model selection OLS.

Theory for lasso variable selection was given in Chapter 2. Also see Pelawa Watagoda and Olive (2021b) and Rathnayake and Olive (2023). Lasso variable selection will often be better than lasso when the model is sparse or if  $n \ge 10(k+1)$ . Lasso can be better than lasso variable selection if  $(\mathbf{X}_I^T \mathbf{X}_I)$  is ill conditioned or if n/(k+1) < 10. Lasso variable selection used a grid of K

#### 3.7 Lasso Variable Selection

 $\lambda_i$  values for i = 1, ..., K where  $\lambda_1 < \lambda_2 < \cdots < \lambda_K$ . If K = 100, then lasso variable selection can be much faster than forward selection if p is large. If n/p is not large, using K > 100 is likely a good idea due to the multitude of MLR models result. See Section 3.17. When p is fixed,  $\hat{\lambda}_{1,n}/\sqrt{n} \xrightarrow{P} \tau$  does not do variable selection well. For variable selection, want  $\hat{\lambda}_{1,n}/\sqrt{n} \rightarrow \infty$ , but  $\hat{\lambda}_{1,n}/n \rightarrow 0$ . See Fan and Li (2001). Let  $\lambda_1 = 2n\lambda$ . Guan and Tibshirani (2020) (and likely glmnet) use  $\lambda < Cn^{-1/4}$  for some large constant C. Hence  $\lambda_{1,n} = \lambda_1 \propto n^{3/4}$ , and the consistency rate of the lasso algorithm is as best  $n^{1/4}$ , but variable selection lasso has the  $\sqrt{n}$  rate (if  $\lambda_k$  is selected by lasso, make  $\hat{\lambda} = \min(\lambda_k, n/\log(n)$  so that  $\hat{\lambda}/n \rightarrow 0$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .)

Suppose the  $n \times q$  matrix x has the q = p - 1 nontrivial predictors. The following R code gives some output for a lasso estimator and then the corresponding lasso variable selection estimator.

```
library(glmnet)
y <- marry[,3]</pre>
x <- marry[,-3]
out<-glmnet(x,y,dfmax=2) #Use 2 for illustration:</pre>
#often dfmax approx min(n/J,p) for some J >= 5.
lam<-out$lambda[length(out$lambda)]</pre>
yhat <- predict(out,s=lam,newx=x)</pre>
#lasso with smallest lambda in grid such that df = 2
lcoef <- predict(out,type="coefficients",s=lam)</pre>
as.vector(lcoef) #first term is the intercept
#3.000397e+03 1.800342e-03 9.618035e-01 0.0 0.0
res <- y - yhat
AERplot(yhat, y, res, d=3, alph=1) #lasso response plot
##lasso variable selection =
#OLS on lasso active predictors and a constant
vars <- 1:dim(x)[2]</pre>
lcoef<-as.vector(lcoef)[-1] #don't need an intercept</pre>
vin <- vars[lcoef>0] #the lasso active set
vin
#1
    2 since predictors 1 and 2 are active
sub <- lsfit(x[,vin],y) #lasso variable selection</pre>
sub$coef
# Intercept
                       pop
                                    mmen
#2.380912e+02 6.556895e-05 1.000603e+00
               6.556895e-05 1.0006
# 238.091
res <- sub$resid
yhat <- y - res
AERplot(yhat, y, res, d=3, alph=1) #response plot
```

**Example 3.2**, continued. The lasso variable selection output below shows results for the marry data where 10-fold CV was used to choose the lasso

estimator. Then lasso variable selection is OLS applied to the active variables with nonzero lasso coefficients and a constant. A grid of 38  $\lambda$  values was used, and  $\lambda_1 > 0$  was selected. The OLS SE, t statistic and pvalue are generally not valid for lasso variable selection by Remark 2.5 and Theorem 2.4.

```
library(glmnet); y <- marry[,3]; x <- marry[,-3]</pre>
out<-cv.glmnet(x,y)</pre>
lam <- out$lambda.min #value of lambda that minimizes
#the 10-fold CV criterion
pp <- out$nzero[out$lambda==lam] + 1</pre>
#d for lasso variable selection
#get lasso variable selection
lcoef <- predict(out,type="coefficients",s=lam)</pre>
lcoef<-as.vector(lcoef)[-1]</pre>
vin <- vars[lcoef!=0]</pre>
sub <- lsfit(x[,vin],y)</pre>
ls.print(sub)
Residual Standard Error=376.9412
R-Square=0.9999
F-statistic (df=2, 23)=147440.1
          Estimate Std.Err t-value Pr(>|t|)58
Intercept 238.0912 248.8616 0.9567
                                         0.3487
             0.0001
                      0.0029 0.0223
                                         0.9824
pop
                      0.0164 60.9878
mmen
             1.0006
                                         0.0000
res <- sub$resid
yhat <- y - res
AERplot2(yhat, y, res=res, d=pp)
$respi #90% PI for a future residual
-822.759 1403.771 #length = 2226.53
```

To summarize Example 3.2, forward selection selected the model with the minimum  $C_p$  while the other methods used 10-fold CV. PLS and PCR used the OLS full model with PI length 2395.74, forward selection used a constant and *mmen* with PI length 2114.72, ridge regression had PI length 20336.58, lasso and lasso variable selection used a constant, *mmen*, and *pop* with lasso PI length 8482.62 and lasso variable selection PI length 2226.53. PI (2.14) was used. Figure 3.1 shows the response plots for forward selection, ridge regression, lasso, and lasso variable selection (labeled relaxed lasso). The plots for PLS=PCR=OLS full model were similar to those of forward selection and lasso variable selection. The plots suggest that the MLR model is appropriate since the plotted points scatter about the identity line. The 90% pointwise prediction bands are also shown, and consist of two lines parallel to the identity line. These bands are very narrow in Figure 3.1 a) and d).


Fig. 3.1 Marry Data Response Plots

# 3.8 The Elastic Net

Following Hastie et al. (2015, p. 57), let  $\boldsymbol{\beta} = (\beta_1, \boldsymbol{\beta}_S^T)^T$ , let  $\lambda_{1,n} \ge 0$ , and let  $\alpha \in [0, 1]$ . Let

$$RSS(\boldsymbol{\beta}) = (\boldsymbol{Y} - \boldsymbol{X}\boldsymbol{\beta})^T (\boldsymbol{Y} - \boldsymbol{X}\boldsymbol{\beta}) = \|\boldsymbol{Y} - \boldsymbol{X}\boldsymbol{\beta}\|_2^2.$$

For a  $k \times 1$  vector  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ , the squared (Euclidean)  $L_2$  norm  $\|\boldsymbol{\eta}\|_2^2 = \boldsymbol{\eta}^T \boldsymbol{\eta} = \sum_{i=1}^k \eta_i^2$ and the  $L_1$  norm  $\|\boldsymbol{\eta}\|_1 = \sum_{i=1}^k |\eta_i|$ .

**Definition 3.10.** The *elastic net* estimator  $\hat{\beta}_{EN}$  minimizes the criterion

$$Q_{EN}(\beta) = \frac{1}{2}RSS(\beta) + \lambda_{1,n} \left[ \frac{1}{2} (1-\alpha) \|\beta_S\|_2^2 + \alpha \|\beta_S\|_1 \right], \text{ or } (3.26)$$

$$Q_2(\boldsymbol{\beta}) = RSS(\boldsymbol{\beta}) + \lambda_1 \|\boldsymbol{\beta}_S\|_2^2 + \lambda_2 \|\boldsymbol{\beta}_S\|_1$$
(3.27)

where  $0 \le \alpha \le 1$ ,  $\lambda_1 = (1 - \alpha)\lambda_{1,n}$  and  $\lambda_2 = 2\alpha\lambda_{1,n}$ .

Note that  $\alpha = 1$  corresponds to lasso (using  $\lambda_{a=0.5}$ ), and  $\alpha = 0$  corresponds to ridge regression. For  $\alpha < 1$  and  $\lambda_{1,n} > 0$ , the optimization problem is *strictly convex* with a unique solution. The elastic net is due to Zou and Hastie (2005). It has been observed that the elastic net can have much better prediction accuracy than lasso when the predictors are highly correlated.

As with lasso, it is often convenient to use the centered response  $\mathbf{Z} = \mathbf{Y} - \overline{\mathbf{Y}}$ where  $\overline{\mathbf{Y}} = \overline{\mathbf{Y}}\mathbf{1}$ , and the  $n \times (p-1)$  matrix of standardized nontrivial predictors  $\mathbf{W}$ . Then regression through the origin is used for the model

$$\boldsymbol{Z} = \boldsymbol{W}\boldsymbol{\eta} + \boldsymbol{e} \tag{3.28}$$

where the vector of fitted values  $\hat{Y} = \overline{Y} + \hat{Z}$ .

Ridge regression can be computed using OLS on augmented matrices. Similarly, the elastic net can be computed using lasso on augmented matrices. Let the elastic net estimator  $\hat{\eta}_{EN}$  minimize

$$Q_{EN}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = RSS_W(\boldsymbol{\eta}) + \lambda_1 \|\boldsymbol{\eta}\|_2^2 + \lambda_2 \|\boldsymbol{\eta}\|_1$$
(3.29)

where  $\lambda_1 = (1 - \alpha)\lambda_{1,n}$  and  $\lambda_2 = 2\alpha\lambda_{1,n}$ . Let the  $(n + p - 1) \times (p - 1)$ augmented matrix  $W_A$  and the  $(n + p - 1) \times 1$  augmented response vector  $Z_A$  be defined by

$$\boldsymbol{W}_A = \begin{pmatrix} \boldsymbol{W} \\ \sqrt{\lambda_1} & \boldsymbol{I}_{p-1} \end{pmatrix}, \text{ and } \boldsymbol{Z}_A = \begin{pmatrix} \boldsymbol{Z} \\ \boldsymbol{0} \end{pmatrix},$$

where **0** is the  $(p-1) \times 1$  zero vector. Let  $RSS_A(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \|\boldsymbol{Z}_A - \boldsymbol{W}_A \boldsymbol{\eta}\|_2^2$ . Then  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_{EN}$  can be obtained from the lasso of  $\boldsymbol{Z}_A$  on  $\boldsymbol{W}_A$ : that is,  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_{EN}$  minimizes

$$Q_L(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = RSS_A(\boldsymbol{\eta}) + \lambda_2 \|\boldsymbol{\eta}\|_1 = Q_{EN}(\boldsymbol{\eta}).$$
(3.30)

Proof: We need to show that  $Q_L(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = Q_{EN}(\boldsymbol{\eta})$ . Note that  $\boldsymbol{Z}_A^T \boldsymbol{Z}_A = \boldsymbol{Z}^T \boldsymbol{Z}$ ,

$$oldsymbol{W}_A oldsymbol{\eta} = egin{pmatrix} oldsymbol{W} oldsymbol{\eta} \ \sqrt{\lambda_1} oldsymbol{\eta} \end{pmatrix},$$

and  $\boldsymbol{Z}_{A}^{T}\boldsymbol{W}_{A}$   $\boldsymbol{\eta}=\boldsymbol{Z}^{T}\boldsymbol{W}\boldsymbol{\eta}.$  Then

$$RSS_A(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \|\boldsymbol{Z}_A - \boldsymbol{W}_A \boldsymbol{\eta}\|_2^2 = (\boldsymbol{Z}_A - \boldsymbol{W}_A \boldsymbol{\eta})^T (\boldsymbol{Z}_A - \boldsymbol{W}_A \boldsymbol{\eta}) =$$
$$\boldsymbol{Z}_A^T \boldsymbol{Z}_A - \boldsymbol{Z}_A^T \boldsymbol{W}_A \boldsymbol{\eta} - \boldsymbol{\eta}^T \boldsymbol{W}_A^T \boldsymbol{Z}_A + \boldsymbol{\eta}^T \boldsymbol{W}_A^T \boldsymbol{W}_A \boldsymbol{\eta} =$$

3.8 The Elastic Net

$$oldsymbol{Z}^Toldsymbol{Z} - oldsymbol{Z}^Toldsymbol{W}oldsymbol{\eta} - oldsymbol{\eta}^Toldsymbol{W}^Toldsymbol{Z} + \left(oldsymbol{\eta}^Toldsymbol{W}^T ~~\sqrt{\lambda_1}~~oldsymbol{\eta}^T
ight) \left(oldsymbol{W}oldsymbol{\eta}\ \sqrt{\lambda_1}~~oldsymbol{\eta}^T
ight).$$

Thus

$$Q_L(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \boldsymbol{Z}^T \boldsymbol{Z} - \boldsymbol{Z}^T \boldsymbol{W} \boldsymbol{\eta} - \boldsymbol{\eta}^T \boldsymbol{W}^T \boldsymbol{Z} + \boldsymbol{\eta}^T \boldsymbol{W}^T \boldsymbol{W} \boldsymbol{\eta} + \lambda_1 \boldsymbol{\eta}^T \boldsymbol{\eta} + \lambda_2 \|\boldsymbol{\eta}\|_1 = RSS(\boldsymbol{\eta}) + \lambda_1 \|\boldsymbol{\eta}\|_2^2 + \lambda_2 \|\boldsymbol{\eta}\|_1 = Q_{EN}(\boldsymbol{\eta}). \quad \Box$$

**Remark 3.15.** i) You could compute the elastic net estimator using a grid of 100  $\lambda_{1,n}$  values and a grid of  $J \geq 10 \alpha$  values, which would take about  $J \ge 10$  times as long to compute as lasso. The above equivalent lasso problem (3.30) still needs a grid of  $\lambda_1 = (1 - \alpha)\lambda_{1,n}$  and  $\lambda_2 = 2\alpha\lambda_{1,n}$  values. Often J = 11, 21, 51, or 101. The elastic net estimator tends to be computed with fast methods for optimizing convex problems, such as coordinate descent. ii) Like lasso and ridge regression, the elastic net estimator is asymptotically equivalent to the OLS full model if p is fixed and  $\lambda_{1,n} = o_P(\sqrt{n})$ , but behaves worse than the OLS full model otherwise. See Theorem 3.9. iii) For prediction intervals, let d be the number of nonzero coefficients from the equivalent augmented lasso problem (3.30). Alternatively, use  $d_2$  with  $d \approx d_2 = tr[\boldsymbol{W}_{AS}(\boldsymbol{W}_{AS}^T \boldsymbol{W}_{AS} + \lambda_{2,n} \boldsymbol{I}_{p-1})^{-1} \boldsymbol{W}_{AS}^T]$  where  $\boldsymbol{W}_{AS}$  corresponds to the active set (not the augmented matrix). See Tibshirani and Taylor (2012, p. 1214). Again  $\lambda_{2,n}$  may not be the  $\lambda_2$  given by the software. iv) The number of nonzero lasso components (not including the constant) is at most  $\min(n, p-1)$ . Elastic net tends to do variable selection, but the number of nonzero components can equal p-1 (make the elastic net equal to ridge regression). Note that the number of nonzero components in the augmented lasso problem (3.30) is at most  $\min(n+p-1, p-1) = p-1$ . vi) The elastic net can be computed with glmnet, and there is an R package elasticnet. vii) For fixed  $\alpha > 0$ , we could get  $\lambda_M$  for elastic net from the equivalent lasso problem. For ridge regression, we could use the  $\lambda_M$  for an  $\alpha$  near 0.

Since lasso uses at most  $\min(n, p-1)$  nontrivial predictors, elastic net and ridge regression can perform better than lasso if the true number of active nontrivial predictors  $a_S > \min(n, p-1)$ . For example, suppose n = 1000, p = 5000, and  $a_S = 1500$ .

Following Jia and Yu (2010), by standard Karush-Kuhn-Tucker (KKT) conditions for convex optimality for Equation (3.27),  $\hat{\beta}_{EN}$  is optimal if

$$2\mathbf{X}^{T}\mathbf{X}\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{EN} - 2\mathbf{X}^{T}\mathbf{Y} + 2\lambda_{1}\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{EN} + \lambda_{2}\boldsymbol{s}_{n} = \boldsymbol{0}, \text{ or}$$
$$(\mathbf{X}^{T}\mathbf{X} + \lambda_{1}\boldsymbol{I}_{p})\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{EN} = \mathbf{X}^{T}\mathbf{Y} - \frac{\lambda_{2}}{2}\boldsymbol{s}_{n}, \text{ or}$$
$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{EN} = \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{R} - n(\mathbf{X}^{T}\mathbf{X} + \lambda_{1}\boldsymbol{I}_{p})^{-1}\frac{\lambda_{2}}{2n}\boldsymbol{s}_{n}.$$
(3.31)

Hence

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{EN} = \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS} - \frac{\lambda_1}{n} n(\boldsymbol{X}^T \boldsymbol{X} + \lambda_1 \boldsymbol{I}_p)^{-1} \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS} - \frac{\lambda_2}{2n} n(\boldsymbol{X}^T \boldsymbol{X} + \lambda_1 \boldsymbol{I}_p)^{-1} \boldsymbol{s}_n$$
$$= \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS} - n(\boldsymbol{X}^T \boldsymbol{X} + \lambda_1 \boldsymbol{I}_p)^{-1} [\frac{\lambda_1}{n} \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS} + \frac{\lambda_2}{2n} \boldsymbol{s}_n].$$

Note that if  $\hat{\lambda}_{1,n}/\sqrt{n} \xrightarrow{P} \tau$  and  $\hat{\alpha} \xrightarrow{P} \psi$ , then  $\hat{\lambda}_1/\sqrt{n} \xrightarrow{P} (1-\psi)\tau$  and  $\hat{\lambda}_2/\sqrt{n} \xrightarrow{P} 2\psi\tau$ . The following theorem shows elastic net is asymptotically equivalent to the OLS full model if  $\hat{\lambda}_{1,n}/\sqrt{n} \xrightarrow{P} 0$ . Note that we get the RR CLT if  $\psi = 0$  and the lasso CLT (using  $2\hat{\lambda}_{1,n}/\sqrt{n} \xrightarrow{P} 2\tau$ ) if  $\psi = 1$ . Under these conditions,

$$\sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{EN} - \boldsymbol{\beta}) = \sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS} - \boldsymbol{\beta}) - n(\boldsymbol{X}^T\boldsymbol{X} + \hat{\lambda}_1\boldsymbol{I}_p)^{-1} \left[\frac{\hat{\lambda}_1}{\sqrt{n}}\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS} + \frac{\hat{\lambda}_2}{2\sqrt{n}}\boldsymbol{s}_n\right].$$

The following theorem is due to Slawski et al. (2010), and summarized in Pelawa Watagoda and Olive (2021b).

**Theorem 3.9, Elastic Net CLT.** Assume p is fixed and that the conditions of the OLS CLT Equation (3.3) hold for the model  $\boldsymbol{Y} = \boldsymbol{X}\boldsymbol{\beta} + \boldsymbol{e}$ . a) If  $\hat{\lambda}_{1,n}/\sqrt{n} \xrightarrow{P} 0$ , then

$$\sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{EN} - \boldsymbol{\beta}) \xrightarrow{D} N_p(\boldsymbol{0}, \sigma^2 \boldsymbol{V}).$$

b) If  $\hat{\lambda}_{1,n}/\sqrt{n} \xrightarrow{P} \tau \ge 0$ ,  $\hat{\alpha} \xrightarrow{P} \psi \in [0,1]$ , and  $s_n \xrightarrow{P} s = s_{\beta}$ , then

$$\sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{EN} - \boldsymbol{\beta}) \xrightarrow{D} N_p \left( -\boldsymbol{V}[(1-\psi)\tau\boldsymbol{\beta} + \psi\tau\boldsymbol{s}], \sigma^2 \boldsymbol{V} \right).$$

**Proof.** By the above remarks and the RR CLT Theorem 3.7,

$$\begin{split} \sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{EN} - \boldsymbol{\beta}) &= \sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{EN} - \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_R + \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_R - \boldsymbol{\beta}) = \sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_R - \boldsymbol{\beta}) + \sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{EN} - \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_R) \\ &\stackrel{D}{\to} N_p \left( -(1 - \psi)\tau \boldsymbol{V} \boldsymbol{\beta}, \sigma^2 \boldsymbol{V} \right) \quad - \quad \frac{2\psi\tau}{2} \boldsymbol{V} \boldsymbol{s} \\ &\sim N_p \left( -\boldsymbol{V}[(1 - \psi)\tau \boldsymbol{\beta} + \psi\tau \boldsymbol{s}], \sigma^2 \boldsymbol{V} \right). \end{split}$$

The mean of the normal distribution is **0** under a) since  $\hat{\alpha}$  and  $s_n$  are bounded.

**Example 3.2**, continued. The slpack function enet does elastic net using 10-fold CV and a grid of  $\alpha$  values  $\{0, 1/am, 2/am, ..., am/am = 1\}$ . The default uses am = 10. The default chose lasso with alph = 1. The function also makes a response plot, but does not add the lines for the pointwise prediction intervals since the false degrees of freedom d is not computed.

```
library(glmnet); y <- marry[,3]; x <- marry[,-3]
tem <- enet(x,y)
tem$alph</pre>
```

```
[1] 1 #elastic net was lasso
tem<-enet(x,y,am=100)
tem$alph
[1] 0.97 #elastic net was not lasso with a finer grid
```

The elastic net variable selection estimator applies OLS to a constant and the active predictors that have nonzero elastic net  $\hat{\eta}_i$ . Hence elastic net is used as a variable selection method. Let  $\mathbf{X}_A$  denote the matrix with a column of ones and the unstandardized active nontrivial predictors. Hence the elastic net variable selection estimator is  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{ENV} = (\mathbf{X}_A^T \mathbf{X}_A)^{-1} \mathbf{X}_A^T \mathbf{Y}$ , and elastic net variable selection is an alternative to forward selection. Let k be the number of active (nontrivial) predictors so  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{ENV}$  is  $(k+1) \times 1$ . Let  $I_{min}$  correspond to the elastic net variable selection estimator and  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{ENV,0} = \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{I_{min},0}$  to the zero padded elastic net variable selection estimator. Then by Remark 2.5 where p is fixed,  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{ENV,0}$  is  $\sqrt{n}$  consistent when elastic net is consistent, with the limiting distribution for  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{ENV,0}$  given by Theorem 2.4. Hence, elastic net variable selection in Chapter 2. Elastic net variable selection will often be better than elastic net when the model is sparse or if  $n \geq 10(k+1)$ . The elastic net can be better than elastic net variable selection if  $(\mathbf{X}_A^T \mathbf{X}_A)$  is ill conditioned or if n/(k+1) < 10. Also see Rathnayake and Olive (2023).

# **3.9 OPLS**

**Definition 3.11.** Denote the one component PLS (OPLS) estimator by  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OPLS}$ .

For estimation with OLS, let the covariance matrix of  $\boldsymbol{x}$  be  $\operatorname{Cov}(\boldsymbol{x}) = \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}} = E[(\boldsymbol{x} - E(\boldsymbol{x}))(\boldsymbol{x} - E(\boldsymbol{x}))^T = E(\boldsymbol{x}\boldsymbol{x}^T) - E(\boldsymbol{x})E(\boldsymbol{x}^T) \text{ and } \boldsymbol{\eta} = \operatorname{Cov}(\boldsymbol{x}, Y) = \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}Y} = E[(\boldsymbol{x} - E(\boldsymbol{X})(Y - E(Y))] = E(\boldsymbol{x}Y) - E(\boldsymbol{x})E(Y) = E[(\boldsymbol{x} - E(\boldsymbol{x}))Y] = E[\boldsymbol{x}(Y - E(Y))].$  Let

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}} = \hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_n = \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}Y} = \boldsymbol{S}_{\boldsymbol{x}Y} = \frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{i=1}^n (\boldsymbol{x}_i - \overline{\boldsymbol{x}})(Y_i - \overline{Y})$$

and

$$\tilde{\boldsymbol{\eta}} = \tilde{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_n = \tilde{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}Y} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n (\boldsymbol{x}_i - \overline{\boldsymbol{x}})(Y_i - \overline{Y}).$$

Then the OLS estimators are  $\hat{\alpha}_{OLS} = \overline{Y} - \hat{\beta}_{OLS}^T \overline{x}$  and

$$\hat{oldsymbol{eta}}_{OLS} = ilde{oldsymbol{\mathcal{\Sigma}}}_{oldsymbol{x}}^{-1} ilde{oldsymbol{\mathcal{\Sigma}}}_{oldsymbol{x}} = \hat{oldsymbol{\mathcal{\Sigma}}}_{oldsymbol{x}}^{-1} \hat{oldsymbol{\mathcal{\Sigma}}}_{oldsymbol{x}} = \hat{oldsymbol{\mathcal{\Sigma}}}_{oldsymbol{x}}^{-1} \hat{oldsymbol{\mathcal{\Sigma}}}_{oldsymbol{x}} = \hat{oldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{oldsymbol{x}}^{-1} \hat{oldsymbol{x}}_{oldsymbol{x}}$$

For a multiple linear regression model with independent, identically distributed (iid) cases,  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS}$  is a consistent estimator of  $\boldsymbol{\beta}_{OLS} = \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}}^{-1} \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}Y}$ under mild regularity conditions, while  $\hat{\alpha}_{OLS}$  is a consistent estimator of  $E(Y) - \boldsymbol{\beta}_{OLS}^T E(\boldsymbol{x})$ .

Cook, Helland, and Su (2013) showed that  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OPLS} = \hat{\lambda} \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{X}Y}$  estimates  $\lambda \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{X}Y} = \boldsymbol{\beta}_{OPLS}$  where

$$\lambda = \frac{\Sigma_{\boldsymbol{x}Y}^{T} \Sigma_{\boldsymbol{x}Y}}{\Sigma_{\boldsymbol{x}Y}^{T} \Sigma_{\boldsymbol{x}} \Sigma_{\boldsymbol{x}} \Sigma_{\boldsymbol{x}Y}} \quad \text{and} \quad \hat{\lambda} = \frac{\hat{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}Y}^{T} \hat{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}Y}}{\hat{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}Y}^{T} \hat{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}} \hat{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}Y}} \tag{3.32}$$

for  $\Sigma_{xY} \neq 0$ . If  $\Sigma_{xY} = 0$ , then  $\beta_{OPLS} = 0$ . Let  $\hat{\eta}_{OPLS} = \Sigma_{xY}$ . Large sample theory for OPLS is given by Olive and Zhang (2023).

Chun and Keleş (2010) suggested that  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OPLS}$  only estimates  $\boldsymbol{\beta}_{OLS}$  under very strong regularity conditions. Cook and Forzani (2018, 2019) showed that the regularity condition is  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}}^{-1}\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x},Y} = \lambda\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x},Y}$ , in which case  $\sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OPLS} - \boldsymbol{\beta}_{OLS}) \xrightarrow{D} N_p(\mathbf{0}, \boldsymbol{C})$ . Cook and Forzani (2018, 2019) also showed that under very strong regularity conditions for high dimensions,  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OPLS}$  is a consistent estimator of  $\boldsymbol{\beta}_{OLS}$ . Also see Basa et al. (2022).

In the literature, there is a tendency (perhaps a common Statistical paradigm) to assume that if the estimated model fits the data well, then the model corresponding to the estimator is the model for  $Y|\mathbf{x}$ . For example, in much of the OPLS literature, an assumption is  $Y|\mathbf{x} = \alpha_{OPLS} + \beta_{OPLS}^T \mathbf{x} + e$ . Then  $\beta_{OPLS} = \beta_{OLS}$  by the OLS CLT, and the results in Table 3.1 hold.

Table 3.1 OPLS Results

General	$\boldsymbol{\beta}_{OLS} = \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}}^{-1} \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x},Y} = \lambda \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x},Y} = \boldsymbol{\beta}_{OPLS}$
$\boldsymbol{\beta}_{OLS} = \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}}^{-1} \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x},Y} = \frac{1}{\lambda} [Cov(\boldsymbol{x})]^{-1} \boldsymbol{\beta}_{OPLS}$	$oldsymbol{eta}_{OLS}$ is an eigenvector of $oldsymbol{\Sigma}_{oldsymbol{x}}$
$\boldsymbol{eta}_{OPLS} = \lambda \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x},Y} \stackrel{\wedge}{=} \lambda Cov(\boldsymbol{x}) \boldsymbol{eta}_{OLS}$	$oldsymbol{eta}_{OPLS}$ is an eigenvector of $oldsymbol{\Sigma}_{oldsymbol{x}}$
$oldsymbol{\Sigma}_{oldsymbol{x},Y} = Cov(oldsymbol{x})oldsymbol{eta}_{OLS}$	$\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x},Y}$ is an eigenvector of $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}}$
$\hat{oldsymbol{eta}}_{kPLS}$ estimates $oldsymbol{eta}_{kPLS}$	$\hat{oldsymbol{eta}}_{kPLS}  ext{ estimates } oldsymbol{eta}_{OLS}$

The above tendency leads to problems that have perhaps not yet been observed in the literature. To see some problems, consider multiple linear regression with  $\text{Cov}(\boldsymbol{x}) = diag(1, 2, ..., p)$ . First consider OPLS with  $\boldsymbol{\beta}_{OLS} = \boldsymbol{\beta}_{OPLS}$ . Then at most one element of  $\text{Cov}(\boldsymbol{x}, Y) = \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x},Y}$  is nonzero since  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x},Y}$  is an eigenvector of  $\text{Cov}(\boldsymbol{x})$ . Hence at most one predictor is correlated with Y, regardless of the value of p. This restriction is too strong.

If the cases are iid from a multivariate normal distribution, then  $Y|\mathbf{x} = \alpha_{OLS} + \boldsymbol{\beta}_{OLS}^T \mathbf{x} + e$  and  $Y|\boldsymbol{\beta}_{OPLS}^T \mathbf{x} = \alpha_{OPLS} + \boldsymbol{\beta}_{OPLS}^T \mathbf{x} + e$  are both linear models by Section 3.17 where *e* depends on the model. Since  $\boldsymbol{\beta}_{OPLS} =$ 

#### 3.10 The MMLE

 $\beta_{OLS}$  forces  $\beta_{OLS}$  to be an eigenvector of  $\Sigma_x$ , if  $\beta_{OLS}$  is not an eigenvector of  $\Sigma_{\boldsymbol{x}}$ , then  $\boldsymbol{\beta}_{OPLS} \neq \boldsymbol{\beta}_{OLS}$ . For a computational example, let  $\boldsymbol{x} \sim N_p(\boldsymbol{0}, diag(1, 2, 3, 4))$  with  $\Sigma_{\boldsymbol{x}} = diag(1, 2, 3, 4)$ , and let the population generating model be  $Y_i = x_{i1} + x_{i2} + e_i$  for i = 1, ..., n where the  $e_i$ are iid N(0,1) and independent of the  $\boldsymbol{x}_i$ . Then  $\alpha = 0$  and  $\boldsymbol{\beta} = (1,1,0,0)^T$ . Hence  $\beta_{OLS} = \beta = (1, 1, 0, 0)^T$ ,  $\Sigma_{x,Y} = \Sigma_x \beta_{OLS} = (1, 2, 0, 0)^T$ , and

$$\lambda = \frac{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x},Y}^T \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x},Y}}{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x},Y}^T \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}} \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x},Y}} = 5/9.$$

Thus  $\boldsymbol{\beta}_{OPLS} = \lambda \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x},Y} = \lambda \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}} \boldsymbol{\beta}_{OLS} = (5/9, 10/9, 0, 0)^T \neq \boldsymbol{\beta}_{OLS}.$ Thus OLS and OPLS usually give different valid population multiple linear regression models with  $\beta_{OPLS} \neq \beta_{OLS}$ . However, model iii)  $Y | \beta_{OPLS}^T x =$  $\alpha_{OPLS} + \beta_{OPLS}^T \mathbf{x} + e$  is often a useful multiple linear regression model with large sample theory given in Olive and Zhang (2023). The claims in the OPLS literature that  $\beta_{OLS} = \beta_{OPLS}$  = an eigenvector of  $\Sigma_x$  under mild regularity conditions are incorrect. See, for example, Basa et al. (2022), Cook and Forzani (2018, 2019), and Cook, Helland and Su (2013). The regularity conditions for  $\beta_{OLS}=\beta_{OPLS}$  are very strong. In the OLS literature  $\beta_{OLS}$ can be any vector in  $\mathbb{R}^p$ . If  $\beta_{OLS}$ ,  $\Sigma_{x,Y}$ , and  $\beta_{OPLS}$  were restricted to be eigenvectors of  $\Sigma_x$ , then the OLS and OPLS estimators would often not fit the data well.

### 3.10 The MMLE

The marginal maximum likelihood estimator (MMLE or marginal least squares estimator) is due to Fan and Lv (2008) and Fan and Song (2010). This estimator computes the marginal regression of Y on  $x_i$  resulting in the estimator  $(\hat{\alpha}_{i,M}, \hat{\beta}_{i,M})$  for i = 1, ..., p. Then  $\hat{\beta}_{MMLE} = (\hat{\beta}_{1,M}, ..., \hat{\beta}_{p,M})^T$ . For multiple linear regression, the marginal estimators are the simple linear regression (SLR) estimators, and  $(\hat{\alpha}_{i,M}, \hat{\beta}_{i,M}) = (\hat{\alpha}_{i,SLR}, \hat{\beta}_{i,SLR})$ . Hence

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{MMLE} = [diag(\hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{\mathcal{X}}})]^{-1} \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{\mathcal{X}},Y}$$

If the  $\boldsymbol{w}_i$  are the predictors standardized to have unit sample variances, then

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{MMLE} = \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{MMLE}(\boldsymbol{w}, Y) = \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{w}, Y} = \boldsymbol{I}^{-1} \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{w}, Y} = \hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_{OPLS}(\boldsymbol{w}, Y)$$

where  $(\boldsymbol{w}, Y)$  denotes that Y was regressed on  $\boldsymbol{w}$ , and I is the  $p \times p$  identity matrix. See, for example, James et al. (2021, p. 260).

The MMLE is also used for variable selection. For example, standardize the predictors and take the K-1 variables corresponding to the largest  $|\hat{\beta}_i|$  where  $\hat{\beta}_{MMLE} = (\hat{\beta}_1, ..., \hat{\beta}_p)^T$ . Then perform the regression on these

variables (perhaps not standardized) and a constant. This variable selection method is useful for very large p since the method is fast, but the selected predictors are often highly correlated. Hence it may be useful to perform lasso variable selection or forward selection using the variables selected by MMLE variable selection. Choosing K near min(n/J, p) for J = 1, 5 or 10 may be useful.

MMLE variable selection can also be useful when the predictors are orthogonal. See Goh and Dey (2019) for references. This result may be useful for PCR, PLS, and wavelets.

# 3.11 k-Component Regression Estimators

Consider the MLR model  $Y = \alpha + \boldsymbol{x}^T \boldsymbol{\beta} + e$ . The k-component regression estimators, such as PCR and PLS, use p linear combinations  $\boldsymbol{\eta}_1^T \boldsymbol{x}, ..., \boldsymbol{\eta}_p^T \boldsymbol{x}$ . Then there are p conditional distributions

$$\begin{array}{c} Y|\boldsymbol{\eta}_1^T\boldsymbol{x}\\ Y|(\boldsymbol{\eta}_1^T\boldsymbol{x},\boldsymbol{\eta}_2^T\boldsymbol{x})\\ \vdots\\ Y|(\boldsymbol{\eta}_1^T\boldsymbol{x},\boldsymbol{\eta}_2^T\boldsymbol{x},...,\boldsymbol{\eta}_p^T\boldsymbol{x}).\end{array}$$

Estimating the  $\eta_i$  and performing the ordinary least squares (OLS) regression of Y on  $(\hat{\eta}_1^T \boldsymbol{x}, \hat{\eta}_2^T \boldsymbol{x}, ..., \hat{\eta}_k^T \boldsymbol{x})$  gives the k-component estimator, e.g. the kcomponent PLS estimator  $\hat{\beta}_{kPLS}$  or the k-component PCR estimator, for k = 1, ..., J where  $J \leq p$  and the p-component estimator is the OLS estimator  $\hat{\beta}_{OLS}$ .

**Definition 3.12.** Consider the MLR model  $Y = \alpha + \mathbf{x}^T \boldsymbol{\beta} + e$ . Let  $\mathbf{X} = (\mathbf{1} \ \mathbf{X}_1)$ . Let

$$oldsymbol{v}_i = \hat{oldsymbol{A}}_{k,n}oldsymbol{x}_i = egin{pmatrix} oldsymbol{x}_i^T \hat{oldsymbol{\eta}}_1 \ dots \ oldsymbol{x}_i^T \hat{oldsymbol{\eta}}_k \end{pmatrix} = egin{pmatrix} \hat{oldsymbol{\eta}}_1^T oldsymbol{x}_i \ dots \ oldsymbol{\eta}_k^T oldsymbol{x}_i \end{pmatrix} ext{ where } \hat{oldsymbol{A}}_{k, ext{n}} = egin{pmatrix} \hat{oldsymbol{\eta}}_1^T \ dots \ oldsymbol{\eta}_k^T \ dots \ oldsymbol{\eta}_k^T oldsymbol{x}_i \end{pmatrix}.$$

Let

$$oldsymbol{c}_i = oldsymbol{X}_1 \hat{oldsymbol{\eta}}_i = egin{pmatrix} oldsymbol{x}_1^T \hat{oldsymbol{\eta}}_i \ dots \ oldsymbol{x}_n^T \hat{oldsymbol{\eta}}_i \end{pmatrix}$$

be the *i*th component vector for i = 1, ..., p. Let

3.11 k-Component Regression Estimators

$$oldsymbol{V}_k = (oldsymbol{c}_1,...,oldsymbol{c}_k) = egin{pmatrix} oldsymbol{v}_1^T \ dots \ oldsymbol{v}_n^T \end{pmatrix} = oldsymbol{X}_1 \hat{oldsymbol{A}}_{k,n}^T$$

for k = 1, ..., p. Let the working OLS model

$$\boldsymbol{Y} = \alpha_k \boldsymbol{1} + \boldsymbol{V}_k \boldsymbol{\gamma}_k + \boldsymbol{\epsilon}$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\epsilon}$  depends on the model. Then  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{kE} = \hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n}^T \hat{\boldsymbol{\gamma}}_k$  is the k-component estimator for k = 1, ..., p. The model selection estimator chooses one of the k-component estimators, e.g. using a holdout sample or cross validation, and will be denoted by  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{MSE}$ .

The OLS regression of Y on  $\boldsymbol{w} = \hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n} \boldsymbol{x}$  gives

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\gamma}}_k = \hat{\boldsymbol{\varSigma}}_{\boldsymbol{w}}^{-1} \hat{\boldsymbol{\varSigma}}_{\boldsymbol{w},Y} = (\hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n} \hat{\boldsymbol{\varSigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}} \hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n}^T)^{-1} \hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n} \hat{\boldsymbol{\varSigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x},Y}.$$

Thus

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{kE} = \hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n}^{T} (\hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n} \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}} \hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n}^{T})^{-1} \hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n} \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x},Y} = \hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k} \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x},Y}$$
$$= \hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n}^{T} (\hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n} \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}} \hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n}^{T})^{-1} \hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n} \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}} \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS}(\boldsymbol{x},Y) = \hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k} \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{x}} \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS}(\boldsymbol{x},Y)$$

If  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_i \xrightarrow{P} \boldsymbol{\eta}_i$ , and

$$\hat{oldsymbol{A}}_{k,n} \stackrel{P}{
ightarrow} oldsymbol{A}_k = egin{pmatrix} oldsymbol{\eta}_1^T \ dots \ oldsymbol{\eta}_k^T \end{pmatrix}$$

then

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{kE} \xrightarrow{P} \boldsymbol{\beta}_{kE} = \boldsymbol{A}_{k}^{T} (\boldsymbol{A}_{k} \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}} \boldsymbol{A}_{k}^{T})^{-1} \boldsymbol{A}_{k} \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}} \boldsymbol{\beta}_{OLS}(\boldsymbol{x}, Y) = \boldsymbol{\Lambda}_{k} \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{x}} \boldsymbol{\beta}_{OLS}(\boldsymbol{x}, Y).$$

This convergence can also occur if  $\hat{\eta}_i = \hat{e}_i$  are orthonormal eigenvectors such

that  $\hat{\boldsymbol{A}}_{k,n}^T \hat{\boldsymbol{\gamma}}_k \xrightarrow{P} \boldsymbol{A}_k^T \boldsymbol{\gamma}_k$ , which happened for PCR. The regularity conditions for  $\boldsymbol{\beta}_{kE} = \boldsymbol{\beta}_{OLS}(\boldsymbol{x}, Y)$  tend to be strong, at least for k near 1. Note that  $\boldsymbol{\beta}_{pE} = \boldsymbol{\beta}_{OLS}(\boldsymbol{x}, Y)$  if the inverse matrices exist (and if p = 1), and  $\beta_{kE} = \beta_{OLS}(\boldsymbol{x}, Y)$  if  $\beta_{OLS}(\boldsymbol{x}, Y) = \mathbf{0}$ . Suppose  $\beta_{OLS} = \sum_{j=1}^{j} c_{i_j} \boldsymbol{\eta}_{i_j}$  for some m where  $1 \leq m \leq p$  and the  $c_{i_j} \neq 0$ . If k is large enough to include the  $m \boldsymbol{\eta}_{i_j}$ , then  $\beta_{kE} = \beta_{OLS}(\boldsymbol{x}, Y)$ . Under this regularity condition,  $\gamma_d = c_{i_j}$  if  $\gamma_d$  corresponds to  $\boldsymbol{\eta}_{i_j}$ . This regularity condition becomes weaker as m increases, and  $\beta_{kE}$  can become very highly correlated with  $\boldsymbol{\beta}_{OLS}(\boldsymbol{x},Y)$  as k increases.

In the high dimensional setting, the regularity conditions for  $\hat{\eta}_i \xrightarrow{P} \eta_i$  tend to be very strong.

### 3.12 Prediction Intervals

This section will use the prediction intervals from Section 2.3 applied to the MLR model with  $\hat{m}(\boldsymbol{x}) = \boldsymbol{x}_I^T \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_I$  and I corresponds to the predictors used by the MLR method. We will use the six methods forward selection with OLS, PCR, PLS, lasso, lasso variable selection, and ridge regression. When p > n, results from Hastie et al. (2015, pp. 20, 296, ch. 6, ch. 11) and Luo and Chen (2013) suggest that lasso, lasso variable selection, and forward selection with EBIC can perform well for sparse models: the subset S in Equation (2.1) and Remark 3.7 has  $a_S$  small.

Consider d for the prediction interval (2.14). As in Chapter 2, with the exception of ridge regression, let d be the number of "variables" used by the method, including a constant. Hence for lasso, lasso variable selection, and forward selection, d - 1 is the number of active predictors while d - 1 is the number of "components" used by PCR and PLS.

Many things can go wrong with prediction. It is assumed that the test data follows the same MLR model as the training data. Population drift is a common reason why the above assumption, which assumes that the various distributions involved do not change over time, is violated. Population drift occurs when the population distribution does change over time.

A second thing that can go wrong is that the training or test data set is distorted away from the population distribution. This could occur if outliers are present or if the training data set and test data set are drawn from different populations. For example, the training data set could be drawn from three hospitals, and the test data set could be drawn from two more hospitals. These two populations of three and two hospitals may differ.

A third thing that can go wrong is *extrapolation*: if  $\boldsymbol{x}_f$  is added to  $\boldsymbol{x}_1, ..., \boldsymbol{x}_n$ , then there is extrapolation if  $\boldsymbol{x}_f$  is not like the  $\boldsymbol{x}_i$ , e.g.  $\boldsymbol{x}_f$  is an outlier. Predictions based on extrapolation are not reliable. Check whether the Euclidean distance of  $\boldsymbol{x}_f$  from the coordinatewise median  $\text{MED}(\boldsymbol{X})$  of the  $\boldsymbol{x}_1, ..., \boldsymbol{x}_n$  satisfies  $D_{\boldsymbol{x}_f}(\text{MED}(\boldsymbol{X}), \boldsymbol{I}_p) \leq \max_{i=1,...,n} D_i(\text{MED}(\boldsymbol{X}), \boldsymbol{I}_p)$ . Alternatively, use the ddplot5 function, described in Chapter 1, applied to  $\boldsymbol{x}_1, ..., \boldsymbol{x}_n, \boldsymbol{x}_f$  to check whether  $\boldsymbol{x}_f$  is an outlier.

When  $n \geq 10p$ , let the hat matrix  $\boldsymbol{H} = \boldsymbol{X}(\boldsymbol{X}^T\boldsymbol{X})^{-1}\boldsymbol{X}^T$ . Let  $h_i = h_{ii}$  be the *i*th diagonal element of  $\boldsymbol{H}$  for i = 1, ..., n. Then  $h_i$  is called the *i*th **leverage** and  $h_i = \boldsymbol{x}_i^T(\boldsymbol{X}^T\boldsymbol{X})^{-1}\boldsymbol{x}_i$ . Then the leverage of  $\boldsymbol{x}_f$  is  $h_f = \boldsymbol{x}_f^T(\boldsymbol{X}^T\boldsymbol{X})^{-1}\boldsymbol{x}_f$ . Then a rule of thumb is that extrapolation occurs if  $h_f > \max(h_1, ..., h_n)$ . This rule works best if the predictors are linearly related in that a plot of  $x_i$  versus  $x_j$  should not have any strong nonlinearities. If there are strong nonlinearities among the predictors, then  $\boldsymbol{x}_f$  could be far from the  $\boldsymbol{x}_i$  but still have  $h_f < \max(h_1, ..., h_n)$ . If the regression method, such as lasso or forward selection, uses a set I of a predictors, including a constant, where  $n \geq 10a$ , the above rule of thumb could be used for extrapolation where  $\boldsymbol{x}_f$ ,  $\boldsymbol{x}_i$ , and  $\boldsymbol{X}$  are replaced by  $\boldsymbol{x}_{I,f}, \boldsymbol{x}_{I,i}$ , and  $\boldsymbol{X}_I$ .

For the simulation from Pelawa Watagoda and Olive (2021b), we used several R functions including forward selection (FS) as computed with the regsubsets function from the leaps library, principal components regression (PCR) with the pcr function and partial least squares (PLS) with the plsr function from the pls library, and ridge regression (RR) and lasso with the cv.glmnet function from the glmnet library. Lasso variable selection (LVS) was applied to the selected lasso model.

**Table 3.2** Simulated Large Sample 95% PI Coverages and Lengths,  $e_i \sim N(0,1)$ 

n	р	$\psi$	k		$\mathbf{FS}$	lasso	LVS	RR	PLS	PCR
100	20	0	1	cov	0.9644	0.9750	0.9666	0.9560	0.9438	0.9772
				len	4.4490	4.8245	4.6873	4.5723	4.4149	5.5647
100	40	0	1	cov	0.9654	0.9774	0.9588	0.9274	0.8810	0.9882
				len	4.4294	4.8889	4.6226	4.4291	4.0202	7.3393
100	200	0	1	$\operatorname{cov}$	0.9648	0.9764	0.9268	0.9584	0.6616	0.9922
				len	4.4268	4.9762	4.2748	6.1612	2.7695	12.412
100	50	0	49	$\operatorname{cov}$	0.8996	0.9719	0.9736	0.9820	0.8448	1.0000
				len	22.067	6.8345	6.8092	7.7234	4.2141	38.904
200	20	0	19	cov	0.9788	0.9766	0.9788	0.9792	0.9550	0.9786
				len	4.9613	4.9636	4.9613	5.0458	4.3211	4.9610
200	40	0	19	$\operatorname{cov}$	0.9742	0.9762	0.9740	0.9738	0.9324	0.9792
				len	4.9285	5.2205	5.1146	5.2103	4.2152	5.3616
200	200	0	19	cov	0.9728	0.9778	0.9098	0.9956	0.3500	1.0000
				len	4.8835	5.7714	4.5465	22.351	2.1451	51.896
400	20	0.9	19	cov	0.9664	0.9748	0.9604	0.9726	0.9554	0.9536
				len	4.5121	10.609	4.5619	10.663	4.0017	3.9771
400	40	0.9	19	cov	0.9674	0.9608	0.9518	0.9578	0.9482	0.9646
				len	4.5682	14.670	4.8656	14.481	4.0070	4.3797
400	400	0.9	19	cov	0.9348	0.9636	0.9556	0.9632	0.9462	0.9478
				len	4.3687	47.361	4.8530	48.021	4.2914	4.4764
400	400	0	399	cov	0.9486	0.8508	0.5704	1.0000	0.0948	1.0000
				len	78.411	37.541	20.408	244.28	1.1749	305.93
400	800	0.9	19	cov	0.9268	0.9652	0.9542	0.9672	0.9438	0.9554
				len	4.3427	67.294	4.7803	66.577	4.2965	4.6533

Let  $\boldsymbol{x} = (1 \ \boldsymbol{u}^T)^T$  where  $\boldsymbol{u}$  is the  $(p-1) \times 1$  vector of nontrivial predictors. In the simulations, for i = 1, ..., n, we generated  $\boldsymbol{w}_i \sim N_{p-1}(\boldsymbol{0}, \boldsymbol{I})$  where the m = p-1 elements of the vector  $\boldsymbol{w}_i$  are iid N(0,1). Let the  $m \times m$  matrix  $\boldsymbol{A} = (a_{ij})$  with  $a_{ii} = 1$  and  $a_{ij} = \psi$  where  $0 \leq \psi < 1$  for  $i \neq j$ . Then the vector  $\boldsymbol{u}_i = \boldsymbol{A}\boldsymbol{w}_i$  so that  $\operatorname{Cov}(\boldsymbol{u}_i) = \boldsymbol{\Sigma}\boldsymbol{u} = \boldsymbol{A}\boldsymbol{A}^T = (\sigma_{ij})$  where the diagonal entries  $\sigma_{ii} = [1+(m-1)\psi^2]$  and the off diagonal entries  $\sigma_{ij} = [2\psi+(m-2)\psi^2]$ . Hence the correlations are  $cor(x_i, x_j) = \rho = (2\psi+(m-2)\psi^2)/(1+(m-1)\psi^2)$  for  $i \neq j$  where  $x_i$  and  $x_j$  are nontrivial predictors. If  $\psi = 1/\sqrt{cp}$ , then  $\rho \to 1/(c+1)$  as  $p \to \infty$  where c > 0. As  $\psi$  gets close to 1, the predictor vectors cluster about the line in the direction of  $(1, ..., 1)^T$ . Let  $Y_i = 1+1x_{i,2}+\cdots+1x_{i,k+1}+e_i$  for i=1,...,n. Hence  $\boldsymbol{\beta} = (1,..,1,0,...,0)^T$  with k+1 ones and p-k-1 zeros. The zero mean errors  $e_i$  were iid from five distributions: i) N(0,1), ii)  $t_3$ , iii) EXP(1) - 1, iv) uniform(-1,1), and v) 0.9 N(0,1) + 0.1 N(0,100). Normal distributions usually appear in simulations, and the uniform distribution is the distribution where the shorth undercoverage is maximized by Frey (2013). Distributions ii) and v) have heavy tails, and distribution iii) is not symmetric.

The population shorth 95% PI lengths estimated by the asymptotically optimal 95% PIs are i) 3.92 = 2(1.96), ii) 6.365, iii) 2.996, iv) 1.90 = 2(0.95), and v) 13.490. The split conformal PI (2.16) is not asymptotically optimal for iii), and for iii) PI (2.16) has asymptotic length 2(1.966) = 3.992. The simulation used 5000 runs, so an observed coverage in [0.94, 0.96] gives no reason to doubt that the PI has the nominal coverage of 0.95. The simulation used  $p = 20, 40, 50, n, \text{ or } 2n; \psi = 0, 1/\sqrt{p}, \text{ or } 0.9; \text{ and } k = 1, 19, \text{ or } p-1$ . The OLS full model fails when p = n and p = 2n, where regularity conditions for consistent estimators are strong. The values k = 1 and k = 19 are sparse models where lasso, lasso variable selection, and forward selection with EBIC can perform well when n/p is not large. If k = p-1 and p > n, then the model is dense. When  $\psi = 0$ , the predictors are uncorrelated, when  $\psi = 1/\sqrt{p}$ , the correlation goes to 0.5 as p increases and the predictors are moderately correlated. For  $\psi = 0.9$ , the predictors are highly correlated with 1 dominant principal component, a setting favorable for PLS and PCR. The simulated data sets are rather small since the some of the R estimators are rather slow.

The simulations were done in R. See R Core Team (2016). The results were similar for all five error distributions, and we show some results for the normal and shifted exponential distributions. Tables 3.1 and 3.2 show some simulation results for PI (2.14) where forward selection used  $C_p$  for  $n \ge 10p$  and EBIC for n < 10p. The other methods minimized 10-fold CV. For forward selection, the maximum number of variables used was approximately  $\min(\lceil n/5 \rceil, p)$ . Ridge regression used the same d that was used for lasso.

For  $n \geq 5p$ , coverages tended to be near or higher than the nominal value of 0.95. The average PI length was often near 1.3 times the asymptotically optimal length for n = 10p and close to the optimal length for n = 100p.  $C_p$ and EBIC produced good PIs for forward selection, and 10-fold CV produced good PIs for PCR and PLS. For lasso and ridge regression, 10-fold CV produced good PIs if  $\psi = 0$  or if k was small, but if both  $k \geq 19$  and  $\psi \geq 0.5$ , then 10-fold CV tended to shrink too much and the PI lengths were often too long. Lasso did appear to select  $S \subseteq I_{min}$  since lasso variable selection was good.

For n/p not large, good performance needed stronger regularity conditions, and all six methods can have problems. PLS tended to have severe undercoverage with small average length, but sometimes performed well for  $\psi = 0.9$ . The PCR length was often too long for  $\psi = 0$ . If there was k = 1active population predictor, then forward selection with EBIC, lasso, and lasso variable selection often performed well. For k = 19, forward selection with EBIC often performed well, as did lasso and lasso variable selection for  $\psi = 0$ . For dense models with k = p - 1 and n/p not large, there was often undercoverage. Here forward selection would use about n/5 variables. Let d-1 be the number of active nontrivial predictors in the selected model. For N(0, 1) errors,  $\psi = 0$ , and d < k, an asymptotic population 95% PI has length  $3.92\sqrt{k-d+1}$ . Note that when the  $(Y_i, \boldsymbol{u}_i^T)^T$  follow a multivariate normal distribution, every subset follows a multiple linear regression model. EBIC occasionally had undercoverage, especially for k = 19 or p-1, which was usually more severe for  $\psi = 0.9$  or  $1/\sqrt{p}$ .

**Table 3.3** Simulated Large Sample 95% PI Coverages and Lengths,  $e_i \sim EXP(1) - 1$ 

n	n	a/1	b		$\mathbf{FS}$	lasso	IVS	BB	PIS	PCB
- 11	р	Ψ	ħ		гы	lasso	LVS	nn	I LO	ION
100	20	0	1	$\operatorname{cov}$	0.9622	0.9728	0.9648	0.9544	0.9460	0.9724
				len	3.7909	4.4344	4.3865	4.4375	4.2818	5.5065
2000	20	0	1	cov	0.9506	0.9502	0.9500	0.9488	0.9486	0.9542
				len	3.1631	3.1199	3.1444	3.2380	3.1960	3.3220
200	20	0.9	1	cov	0.9588	0.9666	0.9664	0.9666	0.9556	0.9612
				len	3.7985	3.6785	3.7002	3.7491	3.5049	3.7844
200	20	0.9	19	$\operatorname{cov}$	0.9704	0.9760	0.9706	0.9784	0.9578	0.9592
				len	4.6128	12.1188	4.8732	12.0363	3.3929	3.7374
200	200	0.9	19	$\operatorname{cov}$	0.9338	0.9750	0.9564	0.9740	0.9440	0.9596
				len	4.6271	37.3888	5.1167	56.2609	4.0550	4.6994
400	40	0.9	19	$\operatorname{cov}$	0.9678	0.9654	0.9492	0.9624	0.9426	0.9574
				len	4.3433	14.7390	4.7625	14.6602	3.6229	4.1045

**Table 3.4** Validation Residuals: Simulated Large Sample 95% PI Coverages and Lengths,  $e_i \sim N(0,1)$ 

$^{\mathrm{n,p},\psi,k}$		$\mathbf{FS}$	CFS	LVS	CRL	Lasso	CL	RR	CRR
200, 20, 0, 19	cov	0.9574	0.9446	0.9522	0.9420	0.9538	0.9382	0.9542	0.9430
	len	4.6519	4.3003	4.6375	4.2888	4.6547	4.2964	4.7215	4.3569
$200,\!40,\!0,\!19$	cov	0.9564	0.9412	0.9524	0.9440	0.9550	0.9406	0.9548	0.9404
	len	4.9188	4.5426	5.2665	4.8637	5.1073	4.7193	5.3481	4.9348
200,200, 0,19	cov	0.9488	0.9320	0.9548	0.9392	0.9480	0.9380	0.9536	0.9394
	len	7.0096	6.4739	5.1671	4.7698	31.1417	28.7921	47.9315	44.3321
400,20,0.9,19	cov	0.9498	0.9406	0.9488	0.9438	0.9524	0.9426	0.9550	0.9426
	len	4.4153	4.1981	4.5849	4.3591	9.4405	8.9728	9.2546	8.8054
400,40,0.9,19	cov	0.9504	0.9404	0.9476	0.9388	0.9496	0.9400	0.9470	0.9410
	len	4.7796	4.5423	4.9704	4.7292	13.3756	12.7209	12.9560	12.3118
400,400,0.9,19	cov	0.9480	0.9398	0.9554	0.9444	0.9506	0.9422	0.9506	0.9408
	len	5.2736	5.0131	4.9764	4.7296	43.5032	41.3620	42.6686	40.5578
400,800,0.9,19	cov	0.9550	0.9474	0.9522	0.9412	0.9550	0.9450	0.9550	0.9446
	len	5.3626	5.0943	4.9382	4.6904	60.9247	57.8783	60.3589	57.3323

Tables 3.3 and 3.4 show some results for PIs (2.15) and (2.16). Here forward selection using the minimum  $C_p$  model if  $n_H > 10p$  and EBIC otherwise. The coverage was very good. Labels such as CFS and CRL used PI (2.16). For lasso variable selection, the program sometimes failed to run for 5000 runs, e.g., if the number of variables selected  $d = n_H$ . In Table 3.3, PIs (2.15) and (2.16) are asymptotically equivalent, but PI (2.16) had shorter lengths for moderate n. In Table 3.4, PI (2.15) is shorter than PI (2.16) asymptotically, but for moderate n, PI (2.16) was often shorter.

**Table 3.5** Validation Residuals: Simulated Large Sample 95% PI Coverages and Lengths,  $e_i \sim EXP(1) - 1$ 

$^{\mathrm{n,p},\psi,k}$		$\mathbf{FS}$	CFS	LVS	CRL	Lasso	CL	RR	CRR
200,20,0,1	cov	0.9596	0.9504	0.9588	0.9374	0.9604	0.9432	0.9574	0.9438
	len	4.6055	4.2617	4.5984	4.2302	4.5899	4.2301	4.6807	4.2863
2000, 20, 0, 1	cov	0.9560	0.9508	0.9530	0.9464	0.9544	0.9462	0.9530	0.9462
	len	3.3469	3.9899	3.3240	3.9849	3.2709	3.9786	3.4307	3.9943
200, 20, 0.9, 1	cov	0.9564	0.9402	0.9584	0.9362	0.9634	0.9412	0.9638	0.9418
	len	3.9184	3.8957	3.8765	3.8660	3.8406	3.8483	3.8467	3.8509
200,20,0.9,19	cov	0.9630	0.9448	0.9510	0.9368	0.9554	0.9430	0.9572	0.9420
	len	5.0543	4.6022	4.8139	4.3841	9.8640	9.0748	9.5218	8.7366
200,200,0.9,19	cov	0.9570	0.9434	0.9588	0.9418	0.9552	0.9392	0.9544	0.9394
	len	5.8095	5.2561	5.2366	4.7292	31.1920	28.8602	47.9229	44.3251
$400,\!40,\!0.9,\!19$	cov	0.9476	0.9402	0.9494	0.9416	0.9584	0.9496	0.9562	0.9466
	len	4.6992	4.4750	4.9314	4.6703	13.4070	12.7442	13.0579	12.4015

Table 3.5 shows some results for PIs (2.14) and (2.15) for lasso and ridge regression. The header lasso indicates PI (2.14) was used while vlasso indicates that PI (2.15) was used. PI (2.15) tended to work better when the fit was poor while PI (2.14) was better for n = 2p and k = p - 1. The PIs are asymptotically equivalent for consistent estimators.

# 3.13 Cross Validation

For MLR variable selection there are many methods for choosing the final submodel, including AIC, BIC,  $C_p$ , and EBIC. See Section 2.1. Variable selection is a special case of model selection where there are M models a final model needs to be chosen. Cross validation is a common criterion for model selection.

**Definition 3.12.** For k-fold cross validation (k-fold CV), randomly divide the training data into k groups or folds of approximately equal size  $n_j \approx n/k$  for j = 1, ..., k. Leave out the first fold, fit the statistical method to the k - 1

Table 3.6 PIs (2.14) and (2.15): Simulated Large Sample 95% PI Coverages and Lengths

n	р	$\psi$	k		$\operatorname{dist}$	lasso	vlasso	$\mathbf{RR}$	vRR
100	20	0	1	cov	N(0,1)	0.9750	0.9632	0.9564	0.9606
				len		4.8245	4.7831	4.5741	5.3277
100	20	0	1	$\operatorname{cov}$	EXP(1)-1	0.9728	0.9582	0.9546	0.9612
				len		4.4345	5.0089	4.4384	5.6692
100	50	0	49	$\operatorname{cov}$	N(0,1)	0.9714	0.9606	0.9822	0.9618
				len		6.8345	22.3265	7.7229	27.7275
100	50	0	49	cov	EXP(1)-1	0.9716	0.9618	0.9814	0.9608
				len		6.9460	22.4097	7.8316	27.8306
400	400	0	399	cov	N(0,1)	0.8508	0.9518	1.0000	0.9548
				len		37.5418	78.0652	244.1004	69.5812
400	400	0	399	cov	EXP(1)-1	0.8446	0.9586	1.0000	0.9558
				len		37.5185	78.0564	243.7929	69.5474

remaining folds, and then compute some criterion for the first fold. Repeat for folds 2, ..., k.

Following James et al. (2013, p. 181), if the statistical method is an MLR method, we often compute  $\hat{Y}_i(j)$  for each  $Y_i$  in the fold j left out. Then

$$MSE_{j} = \frac{1}{n_{j}} \sum_{i=1}^{n_{j}} (Y_{i} - \hat{Y}_{i}(j))^{2},$$

and the overall criterion is

$$CV_{(k)} = \frac{1}{k} \sum_{j=1}^{k} MSE_j.$$

Note that if each  $n_j = n/k$ , then

$$CV_{(k)} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} (Y_i - \hat{Y}_i(j))^2.$$

Then  $CV_{(k)} \equiv CV_{(k)}(I_i)$  is computed for i = 1, ..., M, and the model  $I_c$  with the smallest  $CV_{(k)}(I_i)$  is selected.

Assume that model (2.1) holds:  $\mathbf{Y} = \mathbf{x}^T \boldsymbol{\beta} + \mathbf{e} = \mathbf{x}_S^T \boldsymbol{\beta}_S + \mathbf{e}$  where  $\boldsymbol{\beta}_S$  is an  $a_S \times 1$  vector. Suppose p is fixed and  $n \to \infty$ . If  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_I$  is  $a \times 1$ , form the  $p \times 1$  vector  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{I,0}$  from  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_I$  by adding 0s corresponding to the omitted variables. If  $P(S \subseteq I_{min}) \to 1$  as  $n \to \infty$ , then Theorem 2.4 and Remark 2.5 showed that  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{I_{min},0}$  is a  $\sqrt{n}$  consistent estimator of  $\boldsymbol{\beta}$  under mild regularity conditions.

Note that if  $a_S = p$ , then  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{I_{min},0}$  is asymptotically equivalent to the OLS full model  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}$  (since S is equal to the full model).

Choosing folds for k-fold cross validation is similar to randomly allocating cases to treatment groups. The following code is useful for a simulation. It makes copies of 1 to k in a vector of length n called *tfolds*. The sample command makes a permutation of tfolds to get the *folds*. The lengths of the k folds differ by at most 1.

```
n<-26
k<-5
J<-as.integer(n/k)+1
tfolds<-rep(1:k,J)
tfolds<-tfolds[1:n] #can pass tfolds to a loop
folds<-sample(tfolds)
folds
4 2 3 5 3 3 1 5 2 2 5 1 2 1 3 4 2 1 5 5 1 4 1 4 4 3
```

**Example 3.2**, continued. The *slpack* function pifold uses *k*-fold CV to get the coverage and average PI lengths. We used 5-fold CV with coverage and average 95% PI length to compare the forward selection models. All 4 models had coverage 1, but the average 95% PI lengths were 2591.243, 2741.154, 2902.628, and 2972.963 for the models with 2 to 5 predictors. See the following R code.

```
y <- marry[,3]; x <- marry[,-3]</pre>
x1 <- x[,2]
x2 <- x[,c(2,3)]
x3 < -x[,c(1,2,3)]
pifold(x1,y) #nominal 95% PI
$cov
[1] 1
$alen
[1] 2591.243
pifold(x2,y)
$cov
[1] 1
$alen
[1] 2741.154
pifold(x3,y)
$cov
[1] 1
$alen
[1] 2902.628
pifold(x,y)
$cov
```

```
[1] 1
$alen
[1] 2972.963
#Validation PIs for submodels: the sample size is
#likely too small and the validation PI is formed
#from the validation set.
n<-dim(x)[1]</pre>
nH < - ceiling(n/2)
indx<-1:n
perm <- sample(indx,n)</pre>
H <- perm[1:nH]
vpilen(x1,y,H) #13/13 were in the validation PI
$cov
[1] 1.0
$len
[1] 116675.4
vpilen(x2,y,H)
$cov
[1] 1.0
$len
[1] 116679.8
vpilen(x3,y,H)
$cov
[1] 1.0
$len
[1] 116312.5
vpilen(x,y,H)
$cov
[1] 1.0
$len #shortest length
[1] 116270.7
Some more code is below.
n <- 100
p <- 4
k <- 1
q <- p-1
x <- matrix(rnorm(n * q), nrow = n, ncol = q)</pre>
b <- 0 * 1:q
b[1:k] <- 1
y <- 1 + x %*% b + rnorm(n)
x1 < - x[,1]
x^2 < -x[, c(1, 2)]
x3 <- x[,c(1,2,3)]
pifold(x1,y)
```

\$cov [1] 0.96 \$alen [1] 4.2884 pifold(x2,y) \$cov [1] 0.98 \$alen [1] 4.625284 pifold(x3,y) \$cov [1] 0.98 \$alen [1] 4.783187 pifold(x,y) \$cov [1] 0.98 \$alen [1] 4.713151 n <- 10000 p <- 4 k <- 1 q <- p-1 x <- matrix(rnorm(n \* q), nrow = n, ncol = q)</pre> b <- 0 \* 1:q b[1:k] <- 1 y <- 1 + x %\*% b + rnorm(n) x1 < - x[, 1]x2 <- x[,c(1,2)] x3 <- x[,c(1,2,3)] pifold(x1,y) \$cov [1] 0.9491 \$alen [1] 3.96021 pifold(x2,y) \$cov [1] 0.9501 \$alen [1] 3.962338 pifold(x3,y) \$cov [1] 0.9492 \$alen

3.14 Hypothesis Testing after Model Selection, n/p Large

[1] 3.963305
pifold(x,y)
\$cov
[1] 0.9498
\$alen
[1] 3.96203

# 3.14 Hypothesis Testing after Model Selection, n/pLarge

Section 2.6 showed how to use the bootstrap for hypothesis test  $H_0: \boldsymbol{\theta} = \boldsymbol{A}\boldsymbol{\beta} = \boldsymbol{\theta}_0$  versus  $H_1: \boldsymbol{\theta} = \boldsymbol{A}\boldsymbol{\beta} \neq \boldsymbol{\theta}_0$  with the statistic  $T_n = \boldsymbol{A}\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{I_{min},0}$  where  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{I_{min},0}$  is the zero padded OLS estimator computed from the variables corresponding to  $I_{min}$ . The theory needs  $P(S \subseteq I_{min}) \to 1$  as  $n \to \infty$ , and hence applies to OLS variable selection with AIC, BIC, and  $C_p$ , and to lasso variable selection and elastic net variable selection if lasso and elastic net are consistent.

Assume  $n \geq 20p$  and that the error distribution is unimodal and not highly skewed. The response plot and residual plot are plots with  $\hat{Y} = \boldsymbol{x}^T \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}$  on the horizontal axis and Y or r on the vertical axis, respectively. Then the plotted points in these plots should scatter in roughly even bands about the identity line (with unit slope and zero intercept) and the r = 0 line, respectively. See Figure 1.1. If the plots for the OLS full model suggest that the error distribution is skewed or multimodal, then much larger sample sizes may be needed.

Let p be fixed. Then lasso is asymptotically equivalent to OLS if  $\hat{\lambda}_{1n}/\sqrt{n} \rightarrow 0$ , and hence should not have any  $\hat{\beta}_i = 0$ , asymptotically. If  $a_S < p$ , then lasso tends not be  $\sqrt{n}$  consistent if lasso selects S with high probability by Ewald and Schneider (2018), but then lasso variable selection tends to be  $\sqrt{n}$  consistent. If  $\hat{\lambda}_{1n}/n \rightarrow 0$ , then lasso is consistent so  $P(S \subseteq I) \rightarrow 1$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . Hence often if lasso has more than one  $\hat{\beta}_i = 0$ , then lasso is not  $\sqrt{n}$  consistent.

Suppose we use the residual bootstrap where  $\mathbf{Y}^* = \mathbf{X}\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS} + \mathbf{r}^W$  follows a standard linear model where the elements  $r_i^W$  of  $\mathbf{r}^W$  are iid from the empirical distribution of the OLS full model residuals  $r_i$ . In Section 2.6 we used forward selection when regressing  $Y^*$  on  $\mathbf{X}$ , but we could use lasso or ridge regression instead. Since these estimators are consistent if  $\hat{\lambda}_{1n}/n \to 0$  as  $n \to \infty$ , we expect  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_L^*$  and  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_R^*$  to be centered at  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS}$ . If the variability of the  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}^*$  is similar to or greater than that of  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS}$ , then by the geometric argument Theorem 2.5, we might get simulated coverage close to or higher than the nominal. If lasso or ridge regression shrink  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}^*$  too much, then the coverage could be bad. In limited simulations, the prediction region method only simulated well

for ridge regression with  $\psi = 0$ . Results from Ewald and Schneider (2018, p. 1365) suggest that the lasso confidence region volume is greater than OLS confidence region volume when lasso uses  $\lambda_{1n} = \sqrt{n/2}$ .

A small simulation was done for confidence intervals and confidence regions, using the same type of data as for the variable selection simulation in Section 2.6 and the prediction interval simulation in Section 3.9, with  $B = \max(1000, n, 20p)$  and 5000 runs. The regression model used  $\boldsymbol{\beta} = (1, 1, 0, 0)^T$  with n = 100 and p = 4. When  $\psi = 0$ , the design matrix  $\boldsymbol{X}$  consisted of iid N(0,1) random variables. See Table 3.6 which was taken from Pelawa Watagoda (2017). The residual bootstrap was used. Types 1)– 5) correspond to types i)–v), and the  $\epsilon$  value only applies to the type 5) error distribution. The function lassobootsim3 uses the prediction region method for lasso and ridge regression. The function lassobootsim4 can be used to simulate confidence intervals for the  $\beta_i$  is  $\boldsymbol{S}_T^*$  is singular for lasso. The test was for  $H_0: (\beta_3, \beta_4)^T = (0, 0)^T$ .

**Table 3.7** Bootstrapping Lasso,  $\psi = 0$ 

n	$\epsilon$	type		$\beta_1$	$\beta_2$	$\beta_3$	$\beta_4$	test
100		1	cov	0.9440	0.9376	0.9910	0.9946	0.9790
			len	0.4143	0.4470	0.3759	0.3763	2.6444
		2	$\cos$	0.9468	0.9428	0.9946	0.9944	0.9816
			len	0.6870	0.7565	0.6238	0.6226	2.6832
		3	$\cos$	0.9418	0.9408	0.9930	0.9948	0.9840
			len	0.4110	0.4506	0.3743	0.3746	2.6684
		4	$\cos$	0.9468	0.9370	0.9938	0.9948	0.9838
			len	0.2392	0.2578	0.2151	0.2153	2.6454
	0.5	5	cov	0.9438	0.9344	0.9988	0.9970	0.9924
			len	2.9380	2.5042	2.4912	2.4715	2.8536
	0.9	5	cov	0.9506	0.9290	0.9974	0.9976	0.9956
			len	3.9180	3.2760	3.7356	3.2739	2.8836

# 3.15 What if n is not >> p?

When p > n, the fitted model should do better than i) interpolating the data or ii) discarding all of the predictors and using the location model of Section 1.4.1 for inference. If p > n, forward selection, lasso, lasso variable selection, elastic net, and elastic net variable selection can be useful for several regression models. Ridge regression, partial least squares, and principal components regression can also be computed for multiple linear regression. Sections 2.3, 3.9, and 4.7 give prediction intervals.

One of the **biggest errors in regression** is to use the response variable to build the regression model using all n cases, and then do inference as if

#### 3.15 What if n is not >> p?

the built model was selected without using the response, e.g., selected before gathering data. Using the response variable to build the model is called *data snooping*, then inference is generally no longer valid, and the model built from data snooping tends to fit the data too well. In particular, do not use data snooping and then use variable selection or cross validation. See Hastie et al (2009, p. 245) and Olive (2017a, pp. 85-89).

Building a regression model from data is one of the most challenging regression problems. The "final full model" will have response variable Y = t(Z), a constant  $x_1$ , and predictor variables  $x_2 = t_2(w_2, ..., w_r), ..., x_p = t_p(w_2, ..., w_r)$  where the initial data consists of  $Z, w_2, ..., w_r$ . Choosing  $t, t_2, ..., t_p$  so that the final full model is a useful regression approximation to the data can be difficult.

As a rule of thumb, if strong nonlinearities are apparent in the predictors  $w_2, ..., w_p$ , it is often useful to remove the nonlinearities by transforming the predictors using power transformations. When p is large, a scatterplot matrix of  $w_2, ..., w_p$  can not be made, but the log rule of Section 1.2 can be useful. Plots from Chapter 1, such as the DD plot, can also be useful. A scatterplot matrix of the  $w_i$  is an array of scatterplots of  $w_i$  versus  $w_j$ . A scatterplot is a plot of  $w_i$  versus  $w_j$ .

In the literature, it is sometimes stated that predictor transformations that are made without looking at the response are "free." The reasoning is that the conditional distribution of  $Y|(x_2 = a_2, ..., x_p = a_p)$  is the same as the conditional distribution of  $Y|[t_2(x_2) = t_2(a_2), ..., t_p(x_p) = t_p(a_p)]$ : there is simply a change of labelling. Certainly if  $Y|x = 9 \sim N(0, 1)$ , then  $Y|\sqrt{x} = 3 \sim N(0,1)$ . To see that the above rule of thumb does not always work, suppose that  $Y = \beta_1 + \beta_2 x_2 + \cdots + \beta_p x_p + e$  where the  $x_i$  are iid lognormal(0,1) random variables. Then  $w_i = \log(x_i) \sim N(0,1)$  for i = 2, ..., pand the scatterplot matrix of the  $w_i$  will be linear while the scatterplot matrix of the  $x_i$  will show strong nonlinearities if the sample size is large. However, there is an MLR relationship between Y and the  $x_i$  while the relationship between Y and the  $w_i$  is nonlinear:  $Y = \beta_1 + \beta_2 e^{w_2} + \dots + \beta_p e^{w_p} + e \neq \beta^T w + e$ . Given Y and the  $w_i$  with no information of the relationship, it would be difficult to find the exponential transformation and to estimate the  $\beta_i$ . The moral is that predictor transformations, especially the log transformation, can and often do greatly simplify the MLR analysis, but predictor transformations can turn a simple MLR analysis into a very complex nonlinear analysis.

### 3.15.1 Sparse Models

When  $n/p \to 0$  as  $n \to \infty$ , consistent estimators generally cannot be found unless the model has a simplifying structure. A sparse model is one such structure. For Equation (4.1), a population regression model is *sparse* if  $a_S$  is small. We want  $n \ge 10a_S$ .

For multiple linear regression with p > n, results from Hastie et al. (2015, pp. 20, 296, ch. 6, ch. 11) and Luo and Chen (2013) suggest that lasso, lasso variable selection, and forward selection with EBIC can perform well for sparse models. Least angle regression, elastic net, and elastic net variable selection can also be useful.

Suppose the selected model is  $I_d$ , and  $\beta_{I_d}$  is  $a_d \times 1$ . For multiple linear regression, forward selection with  $C_p$  and AIC often gives useful results if  $n \geq 5p$  and if the final model I has  $n \geq 10a_d$ . For p < n < 5p, forward selection with  $C_p$  and AIC tends to pick the full model (which overfits since n < 5p) too often, especially if  $\hat{\sigma}^2 = MSE$ . The Hurvich and Tsai (1989)  $AIC_C$  criterion can be useful for MLR and time series if  $n \geq \max(2p, 10a_d)$ . If  $n \geq 5p$ , AIC and BIC are useful for many regression models, and forward selection with EBIC can be used for some models if n/p is small. See Section 2.1 and Chen and Chen (2008).

# 3.16 Data Splitting

A common method for data splitting randomly divides the data set into two half sets. On the first half set, fit the model selection method, e.g. forward selection or lasso, to get the *a* predictors. Use this model as the full model for the second half set: use the standard OLS inference from regressing the response on the predictors found from the first half set. This method can be inefficient if  $n \ge 10p$ , but is useful for a sparse model if  $n \le 5p$ , if the probability that the model underfits goes to zero, and if  $n \ge 20a$ . A model is sparse if the number of predictors with nonzero coefficients is small.

For lasso, the active set I from the first half set (training data) is found, and data splitting estimator is the OLS estimator  $\hat{\beta}_{I,D}$  computed from the second half set (test data). This estimator is not the lasso variable selection estimator. The estimator  $\hat{\beta}_{I,D}$  has the same large sample theory as if I was chosen before obtaining the data.

If n/p is not large, data splitting is useful for many regression models when the *n* cases are independent, including multiple linear regression, multivariate linear regression where there are  $m \ge 2$  response variables, generalized linear models (GLMs), the Cox (1972) proportional hazards regression model, and parametric survival regression models.

Consider a regression model with response variable Y and a  $p \times 1$  vector of predictors  $\boldsymbol{x}$ . This model is the full model. Suppose the *n* cases are independent. To perform data splitting, randomly divide the data into two sets H and V where H has  $n_H$  of the cases and V has the remaining  $n_V = n - n_H$ cases  $i_1, \ldots, i_{n_V}$ . Find a model I, possibly with data snooping or model selection, using the data in the training set H. Use the model I as the full

### 3.16 Data Splitting

model to perform inference using the data in the validation set V. That is, regress  $Y_V$  on  $\mathbf{X}_{V,I}$  and perform the usual inference for the model using the  $j = 1, ..., n_V$  cases in the validation set V. If  $\boldsymbol{\beta}_I$  uses a predictors, we want  $n_V \geq 10a$  and we want  $P(S \subseteq I) \to 1$  as  $n \to \infty$  or for  $(Y_V, \mathbf{X}_{V,I})$  to follow the regression model.

In the literature, often  $n_H \approx \lceil n/2 \rceil$ . For model selection, use the training data set to fit the model selection method, e.g. forward selection or lasso, to get the *a* predictors. On the test set, use the standard regression inference from regressing the response on the predictors found from the training set. This method can be inefficient if  $n \ge 10p$ , but is useful for a sparse model if  $n \le 5p$ , if the probability that the model underfits goes to zero, and if  $n \ge 20a$ .

The method is simple, use one half set to get the predictors, then fit the regression model, such as a GLM or OLS, to the validation half set  $(\mathbf{Y}_V, \mathbf{X}_{V,I})$ . The regression model needs to hold for  $(\mathbf{Y}_V, \mathbf{X}_{V,I})$  and we want  $n_V \geq 10a$  if I uses a predictors. The regression model can hold if  $S \subseteq I$ and the model is sparse. Let  $\mathbf{x} = (\mathbf{x}_1, ..., \mathbf{x}_p)^T$  where  $\mathbf{x}_1$  is a constant. If  $(Y, \mathbf{x}_2, ..., \mathbf{x}_p)^T$  follows a multivariate normal distribution, then  $(Y, \mathbf{x}_I)$  follows a multiple linear regression model for every I. Hence the full model need not be sparse, although the selected model may be suboptimal.

Of course other sample sizes than half sets could be used. For example if n = 1000p, use n = 10p for the training set and n = 990p for the validation set.

**Remark 3.16.** i) One use of data splitting is to try to transform the  $p \ge n$  problem into an  $n \ge 10k$  problem. This method can work if the model is sparse. For multiple linear regression, this method can work if  $\mathbf{Y} \sim N_n(\mathbf{X}\boldsymbol{\beta},\sigma^2 \mathbf{I})$ , since then all subsets I satisfy the MLR model:  $Y_i = \mathbf{x}_{I,i}^T \boldsymbol{\beta}_I + \mathbf{e}_{I,i}$ . See Remark 1.3. If  $\boldsymbol{\beta}_I$  is  $k \times 1$ , we want  $n \ge 10k$  and  $V(\mathbf{e}_{I,i}) = \sigma_I^2$  to be small. For binary logistic regression, the discriminant function model of Definition 4.8 can be useful if  $\mathbf{x}_I | Y = j \sim N_k(\boldsymbol{\mu}_j, \boldsymbol{\Sigma})$  for j = 0, 1. Of course, the models may not be sparse, and the multivariate normal assumptions for MLR and binary logistic regression rarely hold.

ii) Data splitting can be tricky for lasso, ridge regression, and elastic net if the sample sizes of the training and validation sets differ. Roughly set  $\lambda_{1,n_1}/(2n_1) = \lambda_{2,n_2}/(2n_2)$ . Data splitting is much easier for variable selection methods such as forward selection, lasso variable selection, and elastic net variable selection. Find the variables  $x_1^*, ..., x_k^*$  indexed by I from the training set, and use model I as the full model for the validation set.

iii) Another use of data splitting is that data snooping can be used on the training set: use the model as the full model for the validation set.

### 3.17 The Multitude of MLR Models

This chapter showed that the OPLS model and OLS typically estimate different quantities. There are often a multitude of valid MLR models. For example, if the cases  $(Y_i \ \boldsymbol{x}_i^T)^T$  are iid from a nonsingular multivariate normal distribution, then  $Y | \boldsymbol{\eta}^T \boldsymbol{x}$  satisfies a MLR model for any linear combination  $\boldsymbol{\eta}^T \boldsymbol{x}$ . See Olive and Zhang (2023).

### 3.18 Summary

1) The MLR model is  $Y_i = \beta_1 + x_{i,2}\beta_2 + \cdots + x_{i,p}\beta_p + e_i = \mathbf{x}_i^T \boldsymbol{\beta} + e_i$  for i = 1, ..., n. This model is also called the **full model**. In matrix notation, these *n* equations become  $\mathbf{Y} = \mathbf{X}\boldsymbol{\beta} + \mathbf{e}$ . Note that  $x_{i,1} \equiv 1$ .

2) The ordinary least squares OLS full model estimator  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS}$  minimizes  $Q_{OLS}(\boldsymbol{\beta}) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} r_i^2(\boldsymbol{\beta}) = RSS(\boldsymbol{\beta}) = (\boldsymbol{Y} - \boldsymbol{X}\boldsymbol{\beta})^T(\boldsymbol{Y} - \boldsymbol{X}\boldsymbol{\beta})$ . In the estimating equations  $Q_{OLS}(\boldsymbol{\beta})$ , the vector  $\boldsymbol{\beta}$  is a dummy variable. The minimizer  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS}$  estimates the parameter vector  $\boldsymbol{\beta}$  for the MLR model  $\boldsymbol{Y} = \boldsymbol{X}\boldsymbol{\beta} + \boldsymbol{e}$ . Note that  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS} \sim AN_p(\boldsymbol{\beta}, MSE(\boldsymbol{X}^T\boldsymbol{X})^{-1})$ .

3) Given an estimate **b** of  $\beta$ , the corresponding vector of *predicted values* or *fitted values* is  $\hat{Y} \equiv \hat{Y}(b) = Xb$ . Thus the *i*th fitted value

$$\hat{Y}_i \equiv \hat{Y}_i(\boldsymbol{b}) = \boldsymbol{x}_i^T \boldsymbol{b} = x_{i,1} b_1 + \dots + x_{i,p} b_p.$$

The vector of residuals is  $\mathbf{r} \equiv \mathbf{r}(\mathbf{b}) = \mathbf{Y} - \hat{\mathbf{Y}}(\mathbf{b})$ . Thus ith residual  $r_i \equiv r_i(\mathbf{b}) = Y_i - \hat{Y}_i(\mathbf{b}) = Y_i - x_{i,1}b_1 - \cdots - x_{i,p}b_p$ . A response plot for MLR is a plot of  $\hat{Y}_i$  versus  $Y_i$ . A residual plot is a plot of  $\hat{Y}_i$  versus  $r_i$ . If the  $e_i$  are iid from a unimodal distribution that is not highly skewed, the plotted points should scatter about the identity line and the r = 0 line.

	Label	$\operatorname{coef}$	SE	shorth 95% CI for $\beta_i$
4)	$Constant=intercept=x_1$ $x_2$	$\hat{eta}_1 \\ \hat{eta}_2$	$\begin{array}{c} SE(\hat{\beta}_1)\\ SE(\hat{\beta}_2) \end{array}$	$egin{array}{l} [\hat{L}_1, \hat{U}_1] \ [\hat{L}_2, \hat{U}_2] \end{array}$
	$\vdots x_p$	$\hat{\beta}_p$	$SE(\hat{\beta}_p)$	$[\hat{L}_p,\hat{U}_p]$

The classical OLS large sample 95% CI for  $\beta_i$  is  $\hat{\beta}_i \pm 1.96SE(\hat{\beta}_i)$ . Consider testing  $H_0: \beta_i = 0$  versus  $H_A: \beta_i \neq 0$ . If  $0 \in CI$  for  $\beta_i$ , then fail to reject  $H_0$ , and conclude  $x_i$  is not needed in the MLR model given the other predictors are in the model. If  $0 \notin CI$  for  $\beta_i$ , then reject  $H_0$ , and conclude  $x_i$  is needed in the MLR model.

### 3.18 Summary

5) Let  $\boldsymbol{x}_i^T = (1 \ \boldsymbol{u}_i^T)$ . It is often convenient to use the centered response  $Z = Y - \overline{Y}$  where  $\overline{Y} = \overline{Y}\mathbf{1}$ , and the  $n \times (p-1)$  matrix of standardized nontrivial predictors  $\boldsymbol{W} = (W_{ij})$ . For j = 1, ..., p-1, let  $W_{ij}$  denote the (j+1)th variable standardized so that  $\sum_{i=1}^{n} W_{ij} = 0$  and  $\sum_{i=1}^{n} W_{ij}^2 = n$ . Then the sample correlation matrix of the nontrivial predictors  $u_i$  is

$$\boldsymbol{R}_{\boldsymbol{u}} = \frac{\boldsymbol{W}^T \boldsymbol{W}}{n}$$

Then regression through the origin is used for the model  $Z = W\eta + e$ where the vector of fitted values  $\hat{Y} = \overline{Y} + \hat{Z}$ . Thus the centered response  $Z_i = Y_i - \overline{Y}$  and  $\hat{Y}_i = \hat{Z}_i + \overline{Y}$ . Then  $\hat{\eta}$  does not depend on the units of measurement of the predictors. Linear combinations of the  $u_i$  can be written as linear combinations of the  $x_i$ , hence  $\hat{\beta}$  can be found from  $\hat{\eta}$ .

6) A model for variable selection is  $\mathbf{x}^T \boldsymbol{\beta} = \mathbf{x}_S^T \boldsymbol{\beta}_S + \mathbf{x}_E^T \boldsymbol{\beta}_E = \mathbf{x}_S^T \boldsymbol{\beta}_S$  where  $\boldsymbol{x} = (\boldsymbol{x}_S^T, \boldsymbol{x}_E^T)^T, \boldsymbol{x}_S$  is an  $a_S \times 1$  vector, and  $\boldsymbol{x}_E$  is a  $(p - a_S) \times 1$  vector. Let  $x_I$  be the vector of a terms from a candidate subset indexed by I, and let  $x_O$ be the vector of the remaining predictors (out of the candidate submodel). If  $S \subseteq I$ , then  $\boldsymbol{x}^T \boldsymbol{\beta} = \boldsymbol{x}_S^T \boldsymbol{\beta}_S = \boldsymbol{x}_S^T \boldsymbol{\beta}_S + \boldsymbol{x}_{I/S}^T \boldsymbol{\beta}_{(I/S)} + \boldsymbol{x}_O^T \boldsymbol{0} = \boldsymbol{x}_I^T \boldsymbol{\beta}_I$  where  $\boldsymbol{x}_{I/S}$  denotes the predictors in I that are not in S. Since this is true regardless of the values of the predictors,  $\beta_O = 0$  if  $S \subseteq I$ . Note that  $\beta_E = 0$ . Let  $k_S = a_S - 1$  = the number of population active nontrivial predictors. Then k = a - 1 is the number of active predictors in the candidate submodel I.

7) Let  $Q(\boldsymbol{\eta})$  be a real valued function of the  $k \times 1$  vector  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ . The gradient of  $Q(\boldsymbol{\eta})$  is the  $k \times 1$  vector

$$egin{aligned} &\bigtriangledown Q = igtarrow Q(oldsymbol{\eta}) = rac{\partial Q}{\partialoldsymbol{\eta}} = rac{\partial Q(oldsymbol{\eta})}{\partialoldsymbol{\eta}} = egin{bmatrix} rac{\partial}{\partial\eta_1}Q(oldsymbol{\eta}) \ rac{\partial}{\partial\eta_2}Q(oldsymbol{\eta}) \ dots \ rac{\partial}{\partial\eta_k}Q(oldsymbol{\eta}) \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned}$$

Suppose there is a model with unknown parameter vector  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ . A set of *estimat*ing equations  $f(\boldsymbol{\eta})$  is minimized or maximized where  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$  is a dummy variable vector in the function  $f : \mathbb{R}^k \to \mathbb{R}^k$ .

8) As a mnemonic (memory aid) for the following results, note that the derivative  $\frac{d}{dx}ax = \frac{d}{dx}xa = a$  and  $\frac{d}{dx}ax^2 = \frac{d}{dx}xax = 2ax$ . a) If  $Q(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \boldsymbol{a}_{-}^T \boldsymbol{\eta} = \boldsymbol{\eta}^T \boldsymbol{a}$  for some  $k \times 1$  constant vector  $\boldsymbol{a}$ , then  $\nabla Q = \boldsymbol{a}$ .

b) If  $Q(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \boldsymbol{\eta}^T \boldsymbol{A} \boldsymbol{\eta}$  for some  $k \times k$  constant matrix  $\boldsymbol{A}$ , then  $\nabla Q = 2\boldsymbol{A} \boldsymbol{\eta}$ .

c) If  $Q(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \sum_{i=1}^{k} |\eta_i| = \|\boldsymbol{\eta}\|_1$ , then  $\nabla Q = \boldsymbol{s} = \boldsymbol{s}\boldsymbol{\eta}$  where  $s_i = \operatorname{sign}(\eta_i)$  where  $\operatorname{sign}(\eta_i) = 1$  if  $\eta_i > 0$  and  $\operatorname{sign}(\eta_i) = -1$  if  $\eta_i < 0$ . This gradient is only defined for  $\eta$  where none of the k values of  $\eta_i$  are equal to 0.

9) Forward selection with OLS generates a sequence of M models  $I_1, ..., I_M$ where  $I_j$  uses j predictors  $x_1^* \equiv 1, x_2^*, ..., x_M^*$ . Often  $M = \min(\lceil n/J \rceil, p)$  where J is a positive integer such as J = 5.

10) For the model  $\mathbf{Y} = \mathbf{X}\boldsymbol{\beta} + \mathbf{e}$ , methods such as forward selection, PCR, PLS, ridge regression, lasso variable selection, and lasso each generate Mfitted models  $I_1, ..., I_M$ , where M depends on the method. For forward selection the simulation used  $C_p$  for  $n \ge 10p$  and EBIC for n < 10p. The other methods minimized 10-fold CV. For forward selection, the maximum number of variables used was approximately min([n/5], p).

11) Consider choosing  $\hat{\eta}$  to minimize the criterion

$$Q(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \frac{1}{a} (\boldsymbol{Z} - \boldsymbol{W}\boldsymbol{\eta})^T (\boldsymbol{Z} - \boldsymbol{W}\boldsymbol{\eta}) + \frac{\lambda_{1,n}}{a} \sum_{i=1}^{p-1} |\eta_i|^j$$
(3.33)

where  $\lambda_{1,n} \geq 0$ , a > 0, and j > 0 are known constants. Then j = 2 corresponds to ridge regression  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_R$ , j = 1 corresponds to lasso  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_L$ , and a = 1, 2, n, and 2n are common. The residual sum of squares  $RSS_W(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = (\boldsymbol{Z} - \boldsymbol{W}\boldsymbol{\eta})^T(\boldsymbol{Z} - \boldsymbol{W}\boldsymbol{\eta})$ , and  $\lambda_{1,n} = 0$  corresponds to the OLS estimator  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_{OLS} = (\boldsymbol{W}^T \boldsymbol{W})^{-1} \boldsymbol{W}^T \boldsymbol{Z}$ . Note that for a  $k \times 1$  vector  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ , the squared (Euclidean)  $L_2$  norm  $\|\boldsymbol{\eta}\|_2^2 = \boldsymbol{\eta}^T \boldsymbol{\eta} = \sum_{i=1}^k \eta_i^2$  and the  $L_1$  norm  $\|\boldsymbol{\eta}\|_1 = \sum_{i=1}^k |\eta_i|$ .

Lasso and ridge regression have a parameter  $\lambda$ . When  $\lambda = 0$ , the OLS full model is used. Otherwise, the centered response and scaled nontrivial predictors are used with  $\mathbf{Z} = \mathbf{W}\boldsymbol{\eta} + \mathbf{e}$ . See 5). These methods also use a maximum value  $\lambda_M$  of  $\lambda$  and a grid of M  $\lambda$  values  $0 \leq \lambda_1 < \lambda_2 < \cdots < \lambda_{M-1} < \lambda_M$  where often  $\lambda_1 = 0$ . For lasso,  $\lambda_M$  is the smallest value of  $\lambda$  such that  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_{\lambda_M} = \mathbf{0}$ . Hence  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_{\lambda_i} \neq \mathbf{0}$  for i < M.

12) The elastic net estimator  $\hat{\eta}_{EN}$  minimizes

$$Q_{EN}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = RSS(\boldsymbol{\eta}) + \lambda_1 \|\boldsymbol{\eta}\|_2^2 + \lambda_2 \|\boldsymbol{\eta}\|_1$$
(3.34)

where  $\lambda_1 = (1 - \alpha)\lambda_{1,n}$  and  $\lambda_2 = 2\alpha\lambda_{1,n}$  with  $0 \le \alpha \le 1$ .

13) Use  $\mathbf{Z}_n \sim AN_g(\boldsymbol{\mu}_n, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_n)$  to indicate that a normal approximation is used:  $\mathbf{Z}_n \approx N_g(\boldsymbol{\mu}_n, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_n)$ . Let *a* be a constant, let  $\mathbf{A}$  be a  $k \times g$  constant matrix, and let  $\mathbf{c}$  be a  $k \times 1$  constant vector. If  $\sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}_n - \boldsymbol{\theta}) \xrightarrow{D} N_g(\mathbf{0}, \mathbf{V})$ , then  $a\mathbf{Z}_n = a\mathbf{I}_g\mathbf{Z}_n$  with  $\mathbf{A} = a\mathbf{I}_g$ ,

$$a \mathbf{Z}_n \sim AN_g \left( a \boldsymbol{\mu}_n, a^2 \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_n 
ight), \text{ and } \mathbf{A} \mathbf{Z}_n + \mathbf{c} \sim AN_k \left( \mathbf{A} \boldsymbol{\mu}_n + \mathbf{c}, \mathbf{A} \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_n \mathbf{A}^T 
ight),$$
  
 $\hat{\mathbf{\theta}}_n \sim AN_g \left( \mathbf{\theta}, rac{\mathbf{V}}{n} 
ight), \text{ and } \mathbf{A} \hat{\mathbf{\theta}}_n + \mathbf{c} \sim AN_k \left( \mathbf{A} \mathbf{\theta} + \mathbf{c}, rac{\mathbf{A} \mathbf{V} \mathbf{A}^T}{n} 
ight).$ 

14) Assume  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_{OLS} = (\boldsymbol{W}^T \boldsymbol{W})^{-1} \boldsymbol{W}^T \boldsymbol{Z}$ . Let  $\boldsymbol{s}_n = (s_{1n}, ..., s_{p-1,n})^T$  where  $s_{in} \in [-1, 1]$  and  $s_{in} = \operatorname{sign}(\hat{\eta}_i)$  if  $\hat{\eta}_i \neq 0$ . Here  $\operatorname{sign}(\eta_i) = 1$  if  $\eta_i > 1$  and  $\operatorname{sign}(\eta_i) = -1$  if  $\eta_i < 1$ . Then

i) 
$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_R = \hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_{OLS} - \frac{\lambda_{1n}}{n} n (\boldsymbol{W}^T \boldsymbol{W} + \lambda_{1,n} \boldsymbol{I}_{p-1})^{-1} \hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_{OLS}$$

3.18 Summary

ii) 
$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_{L} = \hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_{OLS} - \frac{\lambda_{1,n}}{2n} n(\boldsymbol{W}^{T}\boldsymbol{W})^{-1} \boldsymbol{s}_{n}.$$
  
iii)  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_{EN} = \hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_{OLS} - n(\boldsymbol{W}^{T}\boldsymbol{W} + \lambda_{1}\boldsymbol{I}_{p-1})^{-1} \left[\frac{\lambda_{1}}{n}\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_{OLS} + \frac{\lambda_{2}}{2n}\boldsymbol{s}_{n}\right].$   
15) Assume that the sample correlation matrix  $\boldsymbol{R}_{\boldsymbol{u}} = \frac{\boldsymbol{W}^{T}\boldsymbol{W}}{n} \xrightarrow{P} \boldsymbol{V}^{-1}.$ 

Let  $\boldsymbol{H} = \boldsymbol{W}(\boldsymbol{W}^T \boldsymbol{W})^{-1} \boldsymbol{W}^T = (h_{ij})$ , and assume that  $\max_{i=1,...,n} h_{ii} \xrightarrow{P} 0$  as  $n \to \infty$ . Let  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_A$  be  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_{EN}, \hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_L$ , or  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_R$ . Let p be fixed.

i) LS CLT:  $\sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_{OLS} - \boldsymbol{\eta}) \xrightarrow{D} N_{p-1}(\boldsymbol{0}, \sigma^2 \boldsymbol{V}).$ ii) If  $\hat{\lambda}_{1,p}/\sqrt{n} \xrightarrow{P} 0$ , then

$$\sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_A - \boldsymbol{\eta}) \xrightarrow{D} N_{p-1}(\boldsymbol{0}, \sigma^2 \boldsymbol{V}).$$

iii) If  $\hat{\lambda}_{1,n}/\sqrt{n} \xrightarrow{P} \tau \ge 0$ ,  $\hat{\alpha} \xrightarrow{P} \psi \in [0,1]$ , and  $\boldsymbol{s}_n \xrightarrow{P} \boldsymbol{s} = \boldsymbol{s}\boldsymbol{\eta}$ , then

$$\sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_{EN}-\boldsymbol{\eta}) \stackrel{D}{\rightarrow} N_{p-1} \left(-\boldsymbol{V}[(1-\psi)\tau\boldsymbol{\eta}+\psi\tau\boldsymbol{s}],\sigma^2\boldsymbol{V}\right).$$

iv) If  $\hat{\lambda}_{1,n}/\sqrt{n} \xrightarrow{P} \tau \ge 0$ , then

$$\sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_R - \boldsymbol{\eta}) \xrightarrow{D} N_{p-1}(-\tau \boldsymbol{V} \boldsymbol{\eta}, \sigma^2 \boldsymbol{V}).$$

v) If  $\hat{\lambda}_{1,n}/\sqrt{n} \xrightarrow{P} \tau \geq 0$  and  $s_n \xrightarrow{P} s = s\eta$ , then

$$\sqrt{n}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_L - \boldsymbol{\eta}) \xrightarrow{D} N_{p-1}\left(\frac{-\tau}{2} \boldsymbol{V} \boldsymbol{s}, \sigma^2 \boldsymbol{V}\right).$$

ii) and v) are the Lasso CLT, ii) and iv) are the RR CLT, and ii) and iii) are the EN CLT.

16) Under the conditions of 15), lasso variable selection and elastic net variable selection are  $\sqrt{n}$  consistent under much milder conditions than lasso and elastic net, since the variable selection estimators are  $\sqrt{n}$  consistent when lasso and elastic net are consistent. Let  $I_{min}$  correspond to the predictors chosen by lasso, elastic net, or forward selection, including a constant. Let  $\hat{\beta}_{I_{min}}$  be the OLS estimator applied to these predictors, let  $\hat{\beta}_{I_{min},0}$  be the zero padded estimator. The large sample theory for  $\hat{\beta}_{I_{min},0}$  (from forward selection, lasso variable selection, and elastic net variable selection) is given by Theorem 2.4. Note that the large sample theory for the estimators  $\hat{\beta}$  is given for  $p \times 1$  vectors. The theory for  $\hat{\eta}$  is given for  $(p-1) \times 1$  vectors In particular, the theory for lasso and elastic net does not cast away the  $\hat{\eta}_i = 0$ .

17) Under Equation (2.1) with p fixed, if lasso or elastic net are consistent, then  $P(S \subseteq I_{min}) \to 1$  as  $n \to \infty$ . Hence when lasso and elastic net do variable selection, they are often not  $\sqrt{n}$  consistent.

18) Refer to 6). a) The *OLS full model* tends to be useful if  $n \ge 10p$  with large sample theory better than that of lasso, ridge regression, and elastic

net. Testing is easier and the Olive (2007) PI tailored to the OLS full model will work better for smaller sample sizes than PI (2.14) if  $n \ge 10p$ . If  $n \ge 10p$  but  $\mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X}$  is singular or ill conditioned, other methods can perform better.

Forward selection, lasso variable selection, and elastic net variable selection are competitive with the OLS full model even when  $n \ge 10p$  and  $\mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X}$  is well conditioned. If  $n \le p$  then OLS interpolates the data and is a poor method. If n = Jp, then as J decreases from 10 to 1, other methods become competitive.

b) If  $n \geq 10p$  and  $k_S , then forward selection can give more pre$ cise inference than the OLS full model. When <math>n/p is small, the PI (2.14) for forward selection can perform well if  $n/k_S$  is large. Forward selection can be worse than ridge regression or elastic net if  $k_S > \min(n/J, p)$ . Forward selection can be too slow if both n and p are large. Forward selection, lasso variable selection, and elastic net variable selection tend to be bad if  $(\mathbf{X}_A^T \mathbf{X}_A)^{-1}$  is ill conditioned where  $A = I_{min}$ .

c) If  $n \ge 10p$ , lasso can be better than the OLS full model if  $\mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X}$  is ill conditioned. Lasso seems to perform best if  $k_S$  is not much larger than 10 or if the nontrivial predictors are orthogonal or uncorrelated. Lasso can be outperformed by ridge regression or elastic net if  $k_S > \min(n, p-1)$ .

d) If  $n \ge 10p$  ridge regression and elastic net can be better than the OLS full model if  $\mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X}$  is ill conditioned. Ridge regression (and likely elastic net) seems to perform best if  $k_S$  is not much larger than 10 or if the nontrivial predictors are orthogonal or uncorrelated. Ridge regression and elastic net can outperform lasso if  $k_S > \min(n, p - 1)$ .

e) The *PLS* PI (2.14) can perform well if  $n \ge 10p$  if some of the other five methods used in the simulations start to perform well when  $n \ge 5p$ . PLS may or may not be inconsistent if n/p is not large. Ridge regression tends to be inconsistent unless  $P(d \to p) \to 1$  so that ridge regression is asymptotically equivalent to the OLS full model.

19) Under strong regularity conditions, lasso and lasso variable selection with k-fold CV, and forward selection with EBIC can perform well even if n/p is small. So PI (2.14) can be useful when n/p is small.

20) Using the response variable to build a model is known as data snooping, and invalidates inference if data snooping is used on the entire data set of n cases.

21) Suppose  $\mathbf{x}^T \boldsymbol{\beta} = \mathbf{x}_S^T \boldsymbol{\beta}_S + \mathbf{x}_E^T \boldsymbol{\beta}_E = \mathbf{x}_S^T \boldsymbol{\beta}_S$  where  $\boldsymbol{\beta}_S$  is an  $a_S \times 1$  vector. A regression model is sparse if  $a_S$  is small. We want  $n \ge 10a_S$ .

22) Assume the cases are independent. To perform data splitting, randomly divide the data into two half sets H and V where H has  $n_H$  of the cases and V has the remaining  $n_V = n - n_H$  cases  $i_1, \ldots, i_{n_V}$ . Build the model, possibly with data snooping, or perform variable selection to Find a model I, possibly with data snooping or model selection, using the data in the training set H. Use the model I as the full model to perform inference using the data in the validation set V.

### 3.19 Complements

Good references for forward selection, PCR, PLS, ridge regression, and lasso are Hastie et al. (2009, 2015), James et al. (2013), and Pelawa Watagoda and Olive (2021b). Also see Efron and Hastie (2016). An early reference for forward selection is Efroymson (1960). Under strong regularity conditions, Gunst and Mason (1980, ch. 10) covers inference for ridge regression (and a modified version of PCR) when the iid errors  $e_i \sim N(0, \sigma^2)$ .

Xu et al. (2011) notes that sparse algorithms are not stable. Belsley (1984) shows that centering can mask ill conditioning of X.

Classical principal component analysis based on the correlation matrix can be done using the singular value decomposition (SVD) of the scaled matrix  $\boldsymbol{W}_S = \boldsymbol{W}_g/\sqrt{n-1}$  using  $\hat{\boldsymbol{e}}_i$  and  $\hat{\lambda}_i = \sigma_i^2$  where  $\hat{\lambda}_i = \hat{\lambda}_i(\boldsymbol{W}_S^T \boldsymbol{W}_S)$  is the *i*th eigenvalue of  $\boldsymbol{W}_S^T \boldsymbol{W}_S$ . Here the scaling is using g = 1. For more information about the SVD, see Datta (1995, pp. 552-556) and Fogel et al. (2013).

There is massive literature on variable selection and a fairly large literature for inference after variable selection. See, for example, Bertsimas et al. (2016), Fan and Lv (2010), Ferrari and Yang (2015), Fithian et al. (2014), Hjort and Claeskins (2003), Knight and Fu (2000), Lee et al. (2016), Leeb and Pötscher (2005, 2006), Lockhart et al. (2014), Qi et al. (2015), and Tibshirani et al. (2016).

For post-selection inference, the methods in the literature are often for multiple linear regression assuming normality, or are asymptotically equivalent to using the full model, or find a quantity to test that is not  $A\beta$ . Typically the methods have not been shown to perform better than data splitting. See Ewald and Schneider (2018). When n/p is not large, inference is currently much more difficult. Under strong regularity conditions, lasso and forward selection with EBIC can work well. Leeb et al. (2015) suggests that the Berk et al. (2013) method does not really work. Also see Dezeure et al. (2015), Javanmard and Montanari (2014), Lu et al. (2017), Tibshirani et al. (2016), van de Geer et al. (2014), and Zhang and Cheng (2017). Fan and Lv (2010) gave large sample theory for some methods if  $p = o(n^{1/5})$ . See Tibshirani et al. (2016) for an R package.

**Warning:** For n < 5p, every estimator is unreliable, to my knowledge. Regularity conditions for consistency are strong if they exist. For example, PLS is sometimes inconsistent and sometimes  $\sqrt{n}$  consistent. Validating the MLR estimator with PIs can help. Also make response and residual plots.

**Full OLS Model:** A sufficient condition for  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS}$  to be a consistent estimator of  $\boldsymbol{\beta}$  is  $\operatorname{Cov}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS}) = \sigma^2 (\boldsymbol{X}^T \boldsymbol{X})^{-1} \to \boldsymbol{0}$  as  $n \to \infty$ . See Lai et al. (1979). For more OLS large sample theory, see Eicker (1963) and White (1984).

**Forward Selection:** See Olive and Hawkins (2005), Pelawa Watagoda and Olive (2021ab), and Rathnayake and Olive (2023).

**Principal Components Regression:** Principal components are Karhunen Loeve directions of centered X. See Hastie et al. (2009, p. 66). A useful PCR paper is Cook and Forzani (2008).

**Partial Least Squares:** An important PLS paper is Wold (1975). Also see Wold (1985, 2006). Olive and Zhang (2023) showed  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OPLS}$  is a  $\sqrt{n}$  consistent estimator of  $\boldsymbol{\beta}_{OPLS}$  if the cases ( $\boldsymbol{x}_i, Y_i$ ) are iid with a few moments, p is fixed, and  $n \to \infty$ . Olive and Zhang (2023) also suggested that much of the theory for OPLS and PLS appears to be incorrect, except under regularity conditions that are much too strong. See, for example, Basa, et al. (2022), Cook et al. (2013), Cook (2018), Cook and Forzani (2018, 2019), Cook and Su (2016), and Chun and Keleş (2010). Denham (1997) suggested a PI for PLS that assumes the number of components is selected in advance.

**Ridge Regression:** An important ridge regression paper is Hoerl and Kennard (1970). Also see Gruber (1998). Ridge regression is known as Tikhonov regularization in the numerical analysis literature.

Lasso: Lasso was introduced by Tibshirani (1996). Efron et al. (2004) and Tibshirani et al. (2012) are important papers. Su et al. (2017) note some problems with lasso. If n/p is large, see Knight and Fu (2000) for the residual bootstrap with OLS full model residuals. Camponovo (2015) suggested that the nonparametric bootstrap does not work for lasso. Chatterjee and Lahiri (2011) stated that the residual bootstrap with lasso does not work. Hall et al. (2009) stated that the residual bootstrap with OLS full model residuals does not work, but the *m* out of *n* residual bootstrap with OLS full model residuals does work. Rejchel (2016) gave a good review of lasso theory. Fan and Lv (2010) reviewed large sample theory for some alternative methods. See Lockhart et al. (2014) for a partial remedy for hypothesis testing with lasso. The Ning and Liu (2017) method needs a log likelihood. Knight and Fu (2000) gave theory for fixed *p*.

Regularity conditions for testing are strong. Often lasso tests assume that Y and the nontrivial predictors follow a multivariate normal (MVN) distribution. For the MVN distribution, the MLR model tends to be dense not sparse if n/p is small.

### lasso variable selection:

Applying OLS on a constant and the k nontrivial predictors that have nonzero lasso  $\hat{\eta}_i$  is called *lasso variable selection*. We want  $n \ge 10(k+1)$ . If  $\lambda_1 = 0$ , a variant of lasso variable selection computes the OLS submodel for the subset corresponding to  $\lambda_i$  for i = 1, ..., M. If  $C_p$  is used, then this variant has large sample theory given by Theorem 2.4.

Lasso can also be used for other estimators, such as generalized linear models (GLMs). Then lasso variable selection is the "classical estimator," such as a GLM, applied to the lasso active set. For prediction, lasso variable selection is often better than lasso, but sometimes lasso is better.

See Meinshausen (2007) for the relaxed lasso method with R package relaxo for MLR: apply lasso with penalty  $\lambda$  to get a subset of variables with nonzero coefficients. Then reduce the shrinkage of the nonzero elements

#### 3.19 Complements

by applying lasso again to the nonzero coefficients but with a smaller penalty  $\phi$ . This two stage estimator could be used for other estimators. Lasso variable selection corresponds to the limit as  $\phi \to 0$ .

**Dense Regression or Abundant Regression:** occurs when most of the predictors contribute to the regression. Hence the regression is not sparse. See Cook et al. (2013).

**Other Methods:** Consider the MLR model  $\mathbf{Z} = \mathbf{W}\boldsymbol{\eta} + \mathbf{e}$ . Let  $\lambda \geq 0$  be a constant and let  $q \geq 0$ . The *estimator*  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_q$  minimizes the *criterion* 

$$Q_q(\boldsymbol{b}) = \boldsymbol{r}(\boldsymbol{b})^T \boldsymbol{r}(\boldsymbol{b}) + \lambda \sum_{j=1}^{p-1} |b_i|^q, \qquad (3.35)$$

over all vectors  $\mathbf{b} \in \mathbb{R}^{p-1}$  where we take  $0^0 = 0$ . Then q = 1 corresponds to lasso and q = 2 corresponds to ridge regression. If q = 0, the penalty  $\lambda \sum_{j=1}^{p-1} |b_i|^0 = \lambda k$  where k is the number of nonzero components of **b**. Hence the q = 0 estimator is often called the "best subset" estimator. See Frank and Friedman (1993). For fixed p, large sample theory is given by Knight and Fu (2000). Following Hastie et al. (2009, p. 72), the optimization problem is convex if  $q \geq 1$  and  $\lambda$  is fixed.

Suppose model  $I_k$  contains k predictors including a constant. For multiple linear regression, the forward selection algorithm in Chapter 4 adds a predictor  $x_{k+1}^*$  that minimizes the residual sum of squares, while the Pati et al. (1993) "orthogonal matching pursuit algorithm" uses predictors (scaled to have unit norm:  $\mathbf{x}_i^T \mathbf{x}_i = 1$  for the nontrivial predictors), and adds the scaled predictor  $x_{k+1}^*$  that maximizes  $|\mathbf{x}_{k+1}^{*T}\mathbf{r}_k|$  where the maximization is over variables not yet selected and the  $\mathbf{r}_k$  are the OLS residuals from regressing Yon  $\mathbf{X}_{I_k}^*$ . Fan and Li (2001) and Candes and Tao (2007) gave competitors to lasso. Some fast methods seem similar to the first PLS component.

If  $n \leq 400$  and  $p \leq 3000$ , Bertsimas et al. (2016) give a fast "all subsets" variable selection method. Lin et al. (2012) claim to have a very fast method for variable selection. Lee and Taylor (2014) suggest the marginal screening algorithm: let  $\boldsymbol{W}$  be the matrix of standardized nontrivial predictors. Compute  $\boldsymbol{W}^T \boldsymbol{Y} = (c_1, ..., c_{p-1})^T$  and select the J variables corresponding to the J largest  $|c_i|$ . These are the J standardized variables with the largest absolute correlations with Y. Then do an OLS regression of Y on these J variables and a constant. A slower algorithm somewhat similar but much slower than the Lin et al. (2012) algorithm follows. Let a constant  $x_1$  be in the model, and let  $\boldsymbol{W} = [\boldsymbol{a}_1, ..., \boldsymbol{a}_{p-1}]$  and  $\boldsymbol{r} = \boldsymbol{Y} - \overline{Y}$ . Compute  $\boldsymbol{W}^T \boldsymbol{r}$  and let  $x_2^*$  corresponding  $\boldsymbol{a}_j$  from  $\boldsymbol{W}$  to get  $\boldsymbol{W}_1$ . Let  $\boldsymbol{r}_1$  be the OLS residuals from regressing Y on  $x_1$  and  $x_2^*$ . Compute  $\boldsymbol{W}^T \boldsymbol{r}_1$  and let  $x_3^*$  correspond to the variable with the largest absolute entry. Continue in this manner to get  $x_1, x_2^*, ..., x_j^*$  where  $J = min(p, \lceil n/5 \rceil)$ . Like forward selection, evaluate the J - 1 models  $I_j$  con-

taining the first j predictors  $x_1, x_2^*, ..., x_J^*$  for j = 2, ..., J with a criterion such as  $C_p$ .

Following Sun and Zhang (2012), let (3.6) hold and let

 $Q(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \frac{1}{2n} (\boldsymbol{Z} - \boldsymbol{W}\boldsymbol{\eta})^T (\boldsymbol{Z} - \boldsymbol{W}\boldsymbol{\eta}) + \lambda^2 \sum_{i=1}^{p-1} \rho\left(\frac{|\eta_i|}{\lambda}\right) \text{ where } \rho \text{ is scaled such that the derivative } \rho'(0+) = 1. \text{ As for lasso and elastic net, let } s_j = sgn(\hat{\eta}_j)$ 

where  $s_j \in [-1, 1]$  if  $\hat{\eta}_j = 0$ . Let  $\rho'_j = \rho'(|\hat{\eta}_j|/\lambda)$  if  $\hat{\eta}_j \neq 0$ , and  $\rho'_j = 1$  if  $\hat{\eta}_j = 0$ . Then  $\hat{\eta}$  is a critical point of  $Q(\eta)$  iff  $w_j^T(Z - W\hat{\eta}) = n\lambda s_j \rho'_j$  for j = 1, ..., n. If  $\rho$  is convex, then these conditions are the KKT conditions. Let  $d_j = s_j \rho'_j$ . Then  $W^T Z - W^T W \hat{\eta} = n\lambda d$ , and  $\hat{\eta} = \hat{\eta}_{OLS} - n\lambda (W^T W)^{-1} d$ . If the  $d_j$  are bounded, then  $\hat{\eta}$  is consistent if  $\lambda \to 0$  as  $n \to \infty$ , and  $\hat{\eta}$  is asymptotically equivalent to  $\hat{\eta}_{OLS}$  if  $n^{1/2}\lambda \to 0$ . Note that  $\rho(t) = t$  for t > 0 gives lasso with  $\lambda = \lambda_{1,n}/(2n)$ .

Gao and Huang (2010) give theory for a LAD–lasso estimator, and Qi et al. (2015) is an interesting lasso competitor.

Multivariate linear regression has  $m \geq 2$  response variables. See Olive (2017ab: ch. 12). PLS also works if  $m \geq 1$ , and methods like ridge regression and lasso can also be extended to multivariate linear regression. See, for example, Haitovsky (1987) and Obozinski et al. (2011). Sparse envelope models are given in Su et al. (2016).

### Model Building:

When the entire data set is used to build a model with the response variable, the inference tends to be invalid, and cross validation should not be used to check the model. See Hastie et al. (2009, p. 245). In order for the inference and cross validation to be useful, the response variable and the predictors for the regression should be chosen before looking at the response variable. Predictor transformations can be done as long as the response variable is not used to choose the transformation. You can do model building on the test set, and then inference for the chosen (built) model as the full model with the validation set, provided this model follows the regression model used for inference (e.g. multiple linear regression or a GLM). This process is difficult to simulate.

### AIC and BIC Type Criterion:

Olive and Hawkins (2005) and Burnham and Anderson (2004) are useful reference when p is fixed. Some interesting theory for AIC appears in Zhang (1992). Zheng and Loh (1995) show that  $BIC_S$  can work if  $p = p_n = o(\log(n))$  and there is a consistent estimator of  $\sigma^2$ . For the  $C_p$  criterion, see Jones (1946) and Mallows (1973).

AIC and BIC type criterion and variable selection for high dimensional regression are discussed in Chen and Chen (2008), Fan and Lv (2010), Fujikoshi et al. (2014), and Luo and Chen (2013). Wang (2009) suggests using

$$WBIC(I) = \log[SSE(I)/n] + n^{-1}|I|[\log(n) + 2\log(p)].$$

See Bogdan et al. (2004), Cho and Fryzlewicz (2012), and Kim et al. (2012). Luo and Chen (2013) state that WBIC(I) needs  $p/n^a < 1$  for some 0 < a < 1.

If n/p is large and one of the models being considered is the true model S (shown to occur with probability going to one only under very strong assumptions by Wieczorek and Lei (2021)), then BIC tends to outperform AIC. If none of the models being considered is the true model, then AIC tends to outperform BIC. See Yang (2003).

**Robust Versions:** Hastie et al. (2015, pp. 26-27) discuss some modifications of lasso that are robust to certain types of outliers. Robust methods for forward selection and LARS are given by Uraibi et al. (2017, 2019) that need  $n \gg p$ . If n is not much larger than p, then Hoffman et al. (2015) have a robust Partial Least Squares-Lasso type estimator that uses a clever weighting scheme.

A simple method to make an MLR method robust to certain types of outliers is to find the *covmb2* set *B* of Chapter 1 applied to the quantitative predictors. Then use the MLR method (such as elastic net, lasso, PLS, PCR, ridge regression, or forward selection) applied to the cases corresponding to the  $\boldsymbol{x}_j$  in *B*. Make a response and residual plot, based on the robust estimator  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_B$ , using all *n* cases.

### **Prediction Intervals:**

Lei et al. (2018) and Wasserman (2014) suggested prediction intervals for estimators such as lasso. The method has interesting theory if the  $(\boldsymbol{x}_i, Y_i)$  are iid from some population. Also see Butler and Rothman (1980). Steinberger and Leeb (2016) used leave-one-out residuals, but delete the upper and lower 2.5% of the residuals to make a 95% PI. Hence the PI will have undercoverage and the shorth PI will tend to be shorter when the error distribution is not symmetric.

Let p be fixed, d be for PI (2.14), and  $n \to \infty$ . For elastic net, forward selection, PCR, PLS, ridge regression, lasso variable selection, and lasso, if  $P(d \to p) \to 1$  as  $n \to \infty$  then the seven methods are asymptotically equivalent to the OLS full model, and the PI (2.14) is asymptotically optimal on a large class of iid unimodal zero mean error distributions. The asymptotic optimality holds since the sample quantile of the OLS full model residuals are consistent estimators of the population quantiles of the unimodal error distribution for a large class of distributions. Note that  $d \xrightarrow{P} p$  if  $P(\hat{\lambda}_{1n} \to 0) \to 1$ for elastic net, lasso, and ridge regression, and  $d \xrightarrow{P} p$  if the number d - 1 of components  $(\gamma_j^T x \text{ or } \gamma_j^T w)$  used by the method satisfies  $P(d-1 \to p-1) \to 1$ . Consistent estimators  $\hat{\beta}$  of  $\beta$  also produce residuals such that the sample quantiles of the residuals are consistent estimators of quantiles of the error distribution. See Remark 2.21, Olive and Hawkins (2003), and Rousseeuw and Leroy (1987, p. 128).

### **Degrees of Freedom:**

A formula for the model degrees of freedom df tend to be given for a model when there is no model selection or variable selection. For many estimators, the degrees of freedom is not known if model selection is used. A d for PI (2.14) is often obtained by plugging in the degrees of freedom formula as if model selection did not occur. Then the resulting d is rarely an actual degrees of freedom. As an example, if  $\hat{Y} = H_{\lambda}Y$ , then often  $df = trace(H_{\lambda})$  if  $\lambda$  is selected before examining the data. If model selection is used to pick  $\hat{\lambda}$ , then  $d = trace(\boldsymbol{H}_{\hat{\lambda}})$  is not the model degrees of freedom.

## 3.20 Problems

**3.1.** For ridge regression, suppose  $V = \rho_{u}^{-1}$ . Show that if p/n and  $\lambda/n =$  $\lambda_{1,n}/n$  are both small, then

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_R \approx \hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_{OLS} - \frac{\lambda}{n} \boldsymbol{V} \hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_{OLS}.$$

**3.2.** Consider choosing  $\hat{\eta}$  to minimize the criterion

$$Q(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \frac{1}{a} (\boldsymbol{Z} - \boldsymbol{W} \boldsymbol{\eta})^T (\boldsymbol{Z} - \boldsymbol{W} \boldsymbol{\eta}) + \frac{\lambda_{1,n}}{a} \sum_{i=1}^{p-1} |\eta_i|^j$$

where  $\lambda_{1,n} \ge 0$ , a > 0, and j > 0 are known constants. Consider the regression methods OLS, forward selection, lasso, PLS, PCR, ridge regression, and lasso variable selection.

- a) Which method corresponds to j = 1?
- b) Which method corresponds to j = 2?
- c) Which method corresponds to  $\lambda_{1,n} = 0$ ?

**3.3.** a) For ridge regression, let  $A_n = (X^T X + \lambda_{1,n} I_p)^{-1} X^T X$  and  $B_n =$  $[\boldsymbol{I}_{p} - \lambda_{1,n} (\boldsymbol{X}^{T} \boldsymbol{X} + \lambda_{1,n} \boldsymbol{I}_{p})^{-1}]. \text{ Show } \boldsymbol{A}_{n} - \boldsymbol{B}_{n} = \boldsymbol{0}.$ b) For ridge regression, let  $\boldsymbol{A}_{n} = (\boldsymbol{W}^{T} \boldsymbol{W} + \lambda_{1,n} \boldsymbol{I}_{p-1})^{-1} \boldsymbol{W}^{T} \boldsymbol{W}$  and  $\boldsymbol{B}_{n} = [\boldsymbol{I}_{p-1} - \lambda_{1,n} (\boldsymbol{W}^{T} \boldsymbol{W} + \lambda_{1,n} \boldsymbol{I}_{p-1})^{-1}]. \text{ Show } \boldsymbol{A}_{n} - \boldsymbol{B}_{n} = \boldsymbol{0}.$ 

**3.4.** Suppose  $\hat{Y} = HY$  where H is an  $n \times n$  hat matrix. Then the degrees of freedom  $df(\mathbf{Y}) = tr(\mathbf{H}) = sum$  of the diagonal elements of  $\mathbf{H}$ . An estimator with low degrees of freedom is inflexible while an estimator with high degrees of freedom is flexible. If the degrees of freedom is too low, the estimator tends to underfit while if the degrees of freedom is to high, the estimator tends to overfit.

### 3.20 Problems

a) Find  $df(\hat{\mathbf{Y}})$  if  $\hat{\mathbf{Y}} = \overline{Y}\mathbf{1}$  which uses  $\mathbf{H} = (h_{ij})$  where  $h_{ij} \equiv 1/n$  for all i and j. This inflexible estimator uses the sample mean  $\overline{Y}$  of the response variable as  $\hat{Y}_i$  for i = 1, ..., n.

b) Find  $df(\hat{Y})$  if  $\hat{Y} = Y = I_n Y$  which uses  $H = I_n$  where  $h_{ii} = 1$ . This bad flexible estimator interpolates the response variable.

**3.5.** Suppose  $Y = X\beta + e$ ,  $Z = W\eta + e$ ,  $\hat{Z} = W\hat{\eta}$ ,  $Z = Y - \overline{Y}$ , and  $\hat{Y} = \hat{Z} + \overline{Y}$ . Let the  $n \times p$  matrix  $W_1 = [1 \ W]$  and the  $p \times 1$  vector  $\hat{\eta}_1 = (\overline{Y} \ \hat{\eta}^T)^T$  where the scalar  $\overline{Y}$  is the sample mean of the response variable. Show  $\hat{Y} = W_1\hat{\eta}_1$ .

**3.6.** Let  $Z = Y - \overline{Y}$  where  $\overline{Y} = \overline{Y}\mathbf{1}$ , and the  $n \times (p-1)$  matrix of standardized nontrivial predictors  $G = (G_{ij})$ . For j = 1, ..., p-1, let  $G_{ij}$  denote the (j+1)th variable standardized so that  $\sum_{i=1}^{n} G_{ij} = 0$  and  $\sum_{i=1}^{n} G_{ij}^2 = 1$ . Note that the sample correlation matrix of the nontrivial predictors  $u_i$  is  $R_u = G^T G$ . Then regression through the origin is used for the model

$$\mathbf{Z} = \mathbf{G}\boldsymbol{\eta} + \mathbf{e} \tag{3.36}$$

where the vector of fitted values  $\hat{Y} = \overline{Y} + \hat{Z}$ . The standardization differs from that used for earlier regression models (see Remark 3.3), since  $\sum_{i=1}^{n} G_{ij}^2 = 1 \neq n = \sum_{i=1}^{n} W_{ij}^2$ . Note that

$$G = \frac{1}{\sqrt{n}}W.$$

Following Zou and Hastie (2005), the *naive elastic net*  $\hat{\eta}_N$  estimator is the minimizer of

$$Q_N(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = RSS(\boldsymbol{\eta}) + \lambda_2^* \|\boldsymbol{\eta}\|_2^2 + \lambda_1^* \|\boldsymbol{\eta}\|_1$$
(3.37)

where  $\lambda_i^* \geq 0$ . The term "naive" is used because the elastic net estimator is better. Let  $\tau = \frac{\lambda_2^*}{\lambda_1^* + \lambda_2^*}, \gamma = \frac{\lambda_1^*}{\sqrt{1 + \lambda_2^*}}$ , and  $\eta_A = \sqrt{1 + \lambda_2^*}$   $\eta$ . Let the  $(n+p-1) \times (p-1)$  augmented matrix  $G_A$  and the  $(n+p-1) \times 1$  augmented response vector  $Z_A$  be defined by

$$oldsymbol{G}_A = egin{pmatrix} oldsymbol{G}_A = egin{pmatrix} oldsymbol{G}_A \ \sqrt{\lambda_2^*} \ oldsymbol{I}_{p-1} \end{pmatrix}, \ \ ext{and} \ \ oldsymbol{Z}_A = egin{pmatrix} oldsymbol{Z} \ oldsymbol{0} \end{pmatrix},$$

where **0** is the  $(p-1) \times 1$  zero vector. Let  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_A = \sqrt{1 + \lambda_2^*} \hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}$  be obtained from the lasso of  $\boldsymbol{Z}_A$  on  $\boldsymbol{G}_A$ : that is  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_A$  minimizes

$$Q_N(\boldsymbol{\eta}_A) = \|\boldsymbol{Z}_A - \boldsymbol{G}_A \boldsymbol{\eta}_A\|_2^2 + \gamma \|\boldsymbol{\eta}_A\|_1 = Q_N(\boldsymbol{\eta}).$$

Prove  $Q_N(\boldsymbol{\eta}_A) = Q_N(\boldsymbol{\eta}).$ (Then

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_N = rac{1}{\sqrt{1+\lambda_2^*}} \hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_A ext{ and } \hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_{EN} = \sqrt{1+\lambda_2^*} \ \hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_A = (1+\lambda_2^*) \hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_N.$$

The above elastic net estimator minimizes the criterion

$$Q_G(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \frac{\boldsymbol{\eta}^T \boldsymbol{G}^T \boldsymbol{G} \boldsymbol{\eta}}{1 + \lambda_2^*} - 2\boldsymbol{Z}^T \boldsymbol{G} \boldsymbol{\eta} + \frac{\lambda_2^*}{1 + \lambda_2^*} \|\boldsymbol{\eta}\|_2^2 + \lambda_1^* \|\boldsymbol{\eta}\|_1,$$

and hence is not the elastic net estimator corresponding to Equation (3.22).)

**3.7.** Let  $\boldsymbol{\beta} = (\beta_1, \boldsymbol{\beta}_S^T)^T$ . Consider choosing  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}$  to minimize the criterion

$$Q(\boldsymbol{\beta}) = RSS(\boldsymbol{\beta}) + \lambda_1 \|\boldsymbol{\beta}_S\|_2^2 + \lambda_2 \|\boldsymbol{\beta}_S\|_1$$

where  $\lambda_i \geq 0$  for i = 1, 2.

a) Which values of  $\lambda_1$  and  $\lambda_2$  correspond to ridge regression?

b) Which values of  $\lambda_1$  and  $\lambda_2$  correspond to lasso?

c) Which values of  $\lambda_1$  and  $\lambda_2$  correspond to elastic net?

d) Which values of  $\lambda_1$  and  $\lambda_2$  correspond to the OLS full model?

**3.8.** For the output below, an asterisk means the variable is in the model. All models have a constant, so model 1 contains a constant and mmen.

a) List the variables, including a constant, that models 2, 3, and 4 contain. b) The term out\$cp lists the  $C_p$  criterion. Which model (1, 2, 3, or 4) is the minimum  $C_p$  model  $I_{min}$ ?

```
c) Suppose \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{I_{min}} = (241.5445, 1.001)^T. What is \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{I_{min},0}?
Selection Algorithm: forward #output for Problem 3.8
           pop mmen mmilmen milwmn
           "*"
1
    (1)
          " " "*"
2
    (1)
                        " * "
    (1) "*" "*"
                        " * "
3
           "*" "*"
4
   (1)
                        " * "
out$cp
[1] -0.8268967 1.0151462 3.0029429
                                                 5.0000000
```

**3.9.** Consider the output for Example 2.7 for the OLS full model. The column *resboot* gives the large sample 95% CI for  $\beta_i$  using the shorth applied to the  $\hat{\beta}_{ij}^*$  for j = 1, ..., B using the residual bootstrap. The standard large sample 95% CI for  $\beta_i$  is  $\hat{\beta}_i \pm 1.96SE(\hat{\beta}_i)$ . Hence for  $\beta_2$  corresponding to L, the standard large sample 95% CI is  $-0.001 \pm 1.96(0.002) = -0.001 \pm 0.00392 = [-0.00492, 0.00292]$  while the shorth 95% CI is [-0.005, 0.004].

a) Compute the standard 95% CIs for  $\beta_i$  corresponding to log(W), H, and log(S). Also write down the shorth 95% CI. Are the standard and shorth 95% CIs fairly close?
## 3.20 Problems

b) Consider testing  $H_0: \beta_i = 0$  versus  $H_A: \beta_i \neq 0$ . If the corresponding 95% CI for  $\beta_i$  does not contain 0, then reject  $H_0$  and conclude that the predictor variable  $X_i$  is needed in the MLR model. If 0 is in the CI then fail to reject  $H_0$  and conclude that the predictor variable  $X_i$  is not needed in the MLR model. If 0 is not needed in the MLR model given that the other predictors are in the MLR model.

Which variables, if any, are needed in the MLR model? Use the standard CI if the shorth CI gives a different result. The nontrivial predictor variables are L,  $\log(W)$ , H, and  $\log(S)$ .

**3.10.** Tremearne (1911) presents a data set of about 17 measurements on 112 people of Hausa nationality. We used Y = height. Along with a constant  $x_{i,1} \equiv 1$ , the five additional predictor variables used were  $x_{i,2} = height$  when sitting,  $x_{i,3} = height$  when kneeling,  $x_{i,4} = head$  length,  $x_{i,5} = nasal$  breadth, and  $x_{i,6} = span$  (perhaps from left hand to right hand). The output below is for the OLS full model.

	Estimate	e Std.Err	: 95% shor	th CI
Intercept	-77.0042	65.2956	[-208.864	<b>,</b> 55.051]
X2	0.0156	0.0992	[-0.177,	0.217]
ХЗ	1.1553	0.0832	[ 0.983,	1.312]
X4	0.2186	0.3180	[-0.378,	0.805]
X5	0.2660	0.6615	[-1.038,	1.637]
ХG	0.1396	0.0385	[0.0575,	0.217]

a) Give the shorth 95% CI for  $\beta_2$ .

b) Compute the standard 95% CI for  $\beta_2$ .

c) Which variables, if any, are needed in the MLR model given that the other variables are in the model?

Now we use forward selection and  $I_{min}$  is the minimum  $C_p$  model.

```
Estimate Std.Err 95% shorth CI
Intercept -42.4846 51.2863 [-192.281, 52.492]
Х2
             0
                                  0.000,
                                           0.268]
XЗ
                      0.0598 [
             1.1707
                                  0.992,
                                           1.289]
Χ4
             0
                                  0.000,
                                           0.840]
                              ſ
Χ5
             0
                                  0.000,
                                           1.916]
                              Γ
Χ6
             0.1467
                      0.0368
                                 0.0747,
                                           0.215]
                             ſ
                                      d
                         b
                                С
  (Intercept)
                    а
                                             е
1
         TRUE FALSE TRUE FALSE FALSE
                                        FALSE
2
         TRUE FALSE TRUE FALSE FALSE
                                          TRUE
3
         TRUE FALSE TRUE
                             TRUE FALSE
                                          TRUE
4
         TRUE FALSE TRUE
                             TRUE
                                   TRUE
                                          TRUE
5
         TRUE
                TRUE TRUE
                             TRUE
                                   TRUE
                                          TRUE
> tem2$cp
                0.792566
                           2.189839
[1] 14.389492
                                      4.024738
                                                  6.000000
```

d) What is the value of  $C_p(I_{min})$  and what is  $\hat{\beta}_{I_{min},0}$ ?

e) Which variables, if any, are needed in the MLR model given that the other variables are in the model?

f) List the variables, including a constant, that model 3 contains.

**3.11.** Table 3.7 below shows simulation results for bootstrapping OLS (reg) and forward selection (vs) with  $C_p$  when  $\boldsymbol{\beta} = (1, 1, 0, 0, 0)^T$ . The  $\beta_i$  columns give coverage = the proportion of CIs that contained  $\beta_i$  and the average length of the CI. The test is for  $H_0 : (\beta_3, \beta_4, \beta_5)^T = \mathbf{0}$  and  $H_0$  is true. The "coverage" is the proportion of times the prediction region method bootstrap test failed to reject  $H_0$ . Since 1000 runs were used, a cov in [0.93,0.97] is reasonable for a nominal value of 0.95. Output is given for three different error distributions. If the coverage for both methods  $\geq 0.93$ , the method with the shorter average CI length was more precise. (If one method had coverage  $\geq 0.93$  and the other had coverage < 0.93, we will say the method with coverage  $\geq 0.93$  was more precise.)

a) For  $\beta_3$ ,  $\beta_4$ , and  $\beta_5$ , which method, forward selection or the OLS full model, was more precise?

**Table 3.8** Bootstrapping Forward Selection,  $n = 100, p = 5, \psi = 0, B = 1000$ 

11	0			,		, <b>1</b>	, ,
		$\beta_1$	$\beta_2$	$\beta_3$	$\beta_4$	$\beta_5$	test
reg	cov	0.95	0.93	0.93	0.93	0.94	0.93
	len	0.658	0.672	0.673	0.674	0.674	2.861
$\mathbf{vs}$	cov	0.95	0.94	0.998	0.998	0.999	0.993
	len	0.661	0.679	0.546	0.548	0.544	3.11
reg	cov	0.96	0.93	0.94	0.96	0.93	0.94
	len	0.229	0.230	0.229	0.231	0.230	2.787
$\mathbf{vs}$	cov	0.95	0.94	0.999	0.997	0.999	0.995
	len	0.228	0.229	0.185	0.187	0.186	3.056
reg	cov	0.94	0.94	0.95	0.94	0.94	0.93
	len	0.393	0.398	0.399	0.399	0.398	2.839
$\mathbf{vs}$	cov	0.94	0.95	0.997	0.997	0.996	0.990
	len	0.392	0.400	0.320	0.322	0.321	3.077

b) The test "length" is the average length of the interval  $[0, D_{(U_B)}] = D_{(U_B)}$ where the test fails to reject  $H_0$  if  $D_0 \leq D_{(U_B)}$ . The OLS full model is asymptotically normal, and hence for large enough n and B the reg len row for the test column should be near  $\sqrt{\chi^2_{3,0.95}} = 2.795$ .

Were the three values in the test column for reg within 0.1 of 2.795?

**3.12.** Suppose the MLR model  $Y = X\beta + e$ , and the regression method fits  $Z = W\eta + e$ . Suppose  $\hat{Z} = 245.63$  and  $\overline{Y} = 105.37$ . What is  $\hat{Y}$ ?

**3.13.** To get a large sample 90% PI for a future value  $Y_f$  of the response variable, find a large sample 90% PI for a future residual and add  $\hat{Y}_f$  to the endpoints of the of that PI. Suppose forward selection is used and the large sample 90% PI for a future residual is [-778.28, 1336.44]. What is the large

222

### 3.20 Problems

sample 90% PI for  $Y_f$  if  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{I_{min}} = (241.545, 1.001)^T$  used a constant and the predictor *mmen* with corresponding  $\boldsymbol{x}_{I_{min},f} = (1,75000)^T$ ?

**3.14.** Table 3.8 below shows simulation results for bootstrapping OLS (reg), lasso, and ridge regression (RR) with 10-fold CV when  $\boldsymbol{\beta} = (1, 1, 0, 0)^T$ . The  $\beta_i$  columns give coverage = the proportion of CIs that contained  $\beta_i$  and the average length of the CI. The test is for  $H_0 : (\beta_3, \beta_4)^T = \mathbf{0}$  and  $H_0$  is true. The "coverage" is the proportion of times the prediction region method bootstrap test failed to reject  $H_0$ . OLS used 1000 runs while 100 runs were used for lasso and ridge regression. Since 100 runs were used, a cov in [0.89, 1] is reasonable for a nominal value of 0.95. If the coverage for both methods  $\geq 0.89$ , the method with the shorter average CI length was more precise. (If one method had coverage  $\geq 0.89$  and the other had coverage < 0.89, we will say the method with coverage  $\geq 0.89$  was more precise.) The results for the lasso test were omitted since sometimes  $S_T^*$  was singular. (Lengths for the test column are not comparable unless the statistics have the same asymptotic distribution.)

**Table 3.9** Bootstrapping lasso and RR,  $n = 100, \psi = 0.9, p = 4, B = 250$ 

		$\beta_1$	$\beta_2$	$\beta_3$	$\beta_4$	test
reg	cov	0.942	0.951	0.949	0.943	0.943
	len	0.658	5.447	5.444	5.438	2.490
$\mathbf{RR}$	cov	0.97	0.02	0.11	0.10	0.05
	len	0.681	0.329	0.334	0.334	2.546
$\operatorname{reg}$	cov	0.947	0.955	0.950	0.951	0.952
	len	0.658	5.511	5.497	5.500	2.491
lasso	cov	0.93	0.91	0.92	0.99	
	len	0.698	3.765	3.922	3.803	

a) For  $\beta_3$  and  $\beta_4$  which method, ridge regression or the OLS full model, was better?

b) For  $\beta_3$  and  $\beta_4$  which method, lasso or the OLS full model, was more precise?

**3.15.** Suppose n = 15 and 5-fold CV is used. Suppose observations are measured for the following people. Use the output below to determine which people are in the first fold.

folds: 4 3 4 2 1 4 3 5 2 2 3 1 5 5 1

1) Athapattu, 2) Azizi, 3) Cralley 4) Gallage, 5) Godbold, 6) Gunawardana, 7) Houmadi, 8) Mahappu, 9) Pathiravasan, 10) Rajapaksha, 11) Ranaweera, 12) Safari, 13) Senarathna, 14) Thakur, 15) Ziedzor

**3.16.** Table 3.9 below shows simulation results for a large sample 95% prediction interval. Since 5000 runs were used, a cov in [0.94, 0.96] is reasonable for a nominal value of 0.95. If the coverage for a method  $\geq 0.94$ , the method

with the shorter average PI length was more precise. Ignore methods with cov < 0.94. The MLR model had  $\boldsymbol{\beta} = (1, 1, ..., 1, 0, ..., 0)^T$  where the first k+1 coefficients were equal to 1. If  $\psi = 0$  then the nontrivial predictors were uncorrelated, but highly correlated if  $\psi = 0.9$ .

**Table 3.10** Simulated Large Sample 95% PI Coverages and Lengths,  $e_i \sim N(0,1)$ 

n	р	$\psi$	k		$\mathbf{FS}$	lasso	$\operatorname{RL}$	RR	PLS	PCR
100	40	0	1	cov	0.9654	0.9774	0.9588	0.9274	0.8810	0.9882
				len	4.4294	4.8889	4.6226	4.4291	4.0202	7.3393
400	400	0.9	19	cov	0.9348	0.9636	0.9556	0.9632	0.9462	0.9478
				len	4.3687	47.361	4.8530	48.021	4.2914	4.4764

a) Which method was most precise, given  $cov \ge 0.94$ , when n = 100?

b) Which method was most precise, given  $cov \ge 0.94$ , when n = 400?

**3.17.** When doing a PI or CI simulation for a nominal  $100(1-\delta)\% = 95\%$  interval, there are *m* runs. For each run, a data set and interval are generated, and for the *i*th run  $Y_i = 1$  if  $\mu$  or  $Y_f$  is in the interval, and  $Y_i = 0$ , otherwise. Hence the  $Y_i$  are iid Bernoulli $(1 - \delta_n)$  random variables where  $1 - \delta_n$  is the true probability (true coverage) that the interval will contain  $\mu$  or  $Y_f$ . The observed coverage (= coverage) in the simulation is  $\overline{Y} = \sum_i Y_i/m$ . The variance  $V(\overline{Y}) = \sigma^2/m$  where  $\sigma^2 = (1 - \delta_n)\delta_n \approx (1 - \delta)\delta \approx (0.95)0.05$  if  $\delta_n \approx \delta = 0.05$ . Hence

$$SD(\overline{Y}) \approx \sqrt{\frac{0.95(0.05)}{m}}.$$

If the (observed) coverage is within  $0.95 \pm kSD(\overline{Y})$  the integer k is near 3, then there is no reason to doubt that the actual coverage  $1 - \delta_n$  differs from the nominal coverage  $1-\delta = 0.95$  if  $m \ge 1000$  (and as a crude benchmark, for  $m \ge 100$ ). In the simulation, the length of each interval is computed, and the average length is computed. For intervals with coverage  $\ge 0.95 - kSD(\overline{Y})$ , intervals with shorter average length are better (have more precision).

a) If m = 5000 what is  $3 \text{ SD}(\overline{Y})$ , using the above approximation? Your answer should be close to 0.01.

b) If m = 1000 what is  $3 \text{ SD}(\overline{Y})$ , using the above approximation?

## **R** Problem

Use the command source("G:/slpack.txt") to download the functions and the command source("G:/sldata.txt") to download the data. See Preface or Section 8.1. Typing the name of the slpack function, e.g. vsbootsim3, will display the code for the function. Use the args command, e.g. args(vsbootsim3), to display the needed arguments for the function. For the following problem, the R command can be copied and pasted from (http://parker.ad.siu.edu/Olive/slrhw.txt) into R.

### 3.20 Problems

**3.18.** The *R* program generates data satisfying the MLR model

$$Y = \beta_1 + \beta_2 x_2 + \beta_3 x_3 + \beta_4 x_4 + \epsilon$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\beta} = (\beta_1, \beta_2, \beta_3, \beta_4)^T = (1, 1, 0, 0).$ 

a) Copy and paste the commands for this part into R. The output gives  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS}$  for the OLS full model. Give  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS}$ . Is  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS}$  close to  $\boldsymbol{\beta} = 1, 1, 0, 0)^T$ ?

b) The commands for this part bootstrap the OLS full model using the residual bootstrap. Copy and paste the output into *Word*. The output shows  $T_i^* = \hat{\beta}_i^*$  for j = 1, ..., 5.

 $T_j^* = \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_j^*$  for j = 1, ..., 5. c)  $B = 1000 T_j^*$  were generated. The commands for this part compute the sample mean  $\overline{T}^*$  of the  $T_j^*$ . Copy and paste the output into *Word*. Is  $\overline{T}^*$  close to  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{OLS}$  found in a)?

d) The commands for this part bootstrap the forward selection using the residual bootstrap. Copy and paste the output into *Word*. The output shows  $T_j^* = \hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{I_{min},0,j}^*$  for j = 1, ..., 5. The last two variables may have a few 0s. e)  $B = 1000 T_j^*$  were generated. The commands for this part compute the

e)  $B = 1000 T_j^*$  were generated. The commands for this part compute the sample mean  $\overline{T}^*$  of the  $T_j^*$  where  $T_j^*$  is as in d). Copy and paste the output into Word. Is  $\overline{T}^*$  close to  $\beta = (1, 1, 0, 0)$ ?

**3.19.** This simulation is similar to that used to form Table 2.2, but 1000 runs are used so coverage in [0.93,0.97] suggests that the actual coverage is close to the nominal coverage of 0.95.

The model is  $Y = \mathbf{x}^T \boldsymbol{\beta} + e = \mathbf{x}_S^T \boldsymbol{\beta}_S + e$  where  $\boldsymbol{\beta}_S = (\beta_1, \beta_2, ..., \beta_{k+1})^T = (\beta_1, \beta_2)^T$  and k = 1 is the number of active nontrivial predictors in the population model. The output for *test* tests  $H_0: (\beta_{k+2}, ..., \beta_p)^T = (\beta_3, ..., \beta_p)^T = \mathbf{0}$  and  $H_0$  is true. The output gives the proportion of times the prediction region method bootstrap test fails to reject  $H_0$ . The nominal proportion is 0.95.

After getting your output, make a table similar to Table 2.2 with 4 lines. If your p = 5 then you need to add a column for  $\beta_5$ . Two lines are for reg (the OLS full model) and two lines are for vs (forward selection with  $I_{min}$ ). The  $\beta_i$  columns give the coverage and lengths of the 95% CIs for  $\beta_i$ . If the coverage  $\geq 0.93$ , then the shorter CI length is more precise. Were the CIs for forward selection more precise than the CIs for the OLS full model for  $\beta_3$ and  $\beta_4$ ?

To get the output, copy and paste the source commands from (http://parker.ad.siu.edu/Olive/slrhw.txt) into R. Copy and past the library command for this problem into R.

If you are person j then copy and paste the R code for person j for this problem into R.

**3.20.** This problem is like Problem 3.19, but ridge regression is used instead of forward selection. This simulation is similar to that used to form Table 2.2, but 100 runs are used so coverage in [0.89,1.0] suggests that the actual coverage is close to the nominal coverage of 0.95.

# **3 Statistical Learning Alternatives to OLS**

The model is  $Y = \mathbf{x}^T \boldsymbol{\beta} + e = \mathbf{x}_S^T \boldsymbol{\beta}_S + e$  where  $\boldsymbol{\beta}_S = (\beta_1, \beta_2, ..., \beta_{k+1})^T = (\beta_1, \beta_2)^T$  and k = 1 is the number of active nontrivial predictors in the population model. The output for *test* tests  $H_0: (\beta_{k+2}, ..., \beta_p)^T = (\beta_3, ..., \beta_p)^T = \mathbf{0}$  and  $H_0$  is true. The output gives the proportion of times the prediction region method bootstrap test fails to reject  $H_0$ . The nominal proportion is 0.95.

After getting your output, make a table similar to Table 2.2 with 4 lines. If your p = 5 then you need to add a column for  $\beta_5$ . Two lines are for reg (the OLS full model) and two lines are for ridge regression (with 10 fold CV). The  $\beta_i$  columns give the coverage and lengths of the 95% CIs for  $\beta_i$ . If the coverage  $\geq 0.89$ , then the shorter CI length is more precise. Were the CIs for ridge regression more precise than the CIs for the OLS full model for  $\beta_3$  and  $\beta_4$ ?

To get the output, copy and paste the source commands from (http://parker.ad.siu.edu/Olive/slrhw.txt) into R. Copy and past the library command for this problem into R.

If you are person j then copy and paste the R code for person j for this problem into R.

**3.21.** This is like Problem 3.20, except lasso is used. If you are person j in Problem 3.20, then copy and paste the R code for person j for this problem into R. Make a table with 4 lines: two for OLS and 2 for lasso. Were the CIs for lasso more precise than the CIs for the OLS full model for  $\beta_3$  and  $\beta_4$ ?

226